

# Linked Discourses

Bhikkhu Sujato



# LINKED DISCOURSES

A plain translation of the Saṃyutta Nikāya



*translated and introduced by*

BHIKKHU SUJATO

VOLUME 2

SN 12–21

THE GROUP OF LINKED DISCOURSES  
BEGINNING WITH CAUSATION

NIDĀNAVAGGASĀMYUTTA

*Linked Discourses* is a translation of the Saṃyuttanikāya by Bhikkhu Sujato.

Creative Commons Zero (CC0)

To the extent possible under law, Bhikkhu Sujato has waived all copyright and related or neighboring rights to *Linked Discourses*.

This work is published from Australia.

*This translation is an expression of an ancient spiritual text that has been passed down by the Buddhist tradition for the benefit of all sentient beings. It is dedicated to the public domain via Creative Commons Zero (CC0). You are encouraged to copy, reproduce, adapt, alter, or otherwise make use of this translation. The translator respectfully requests that any use be in accordance with the values and principles of the Buddhist community.*

**Web publication date** 2018

**This edition** 2025-01-13 01:01:43

**Publication type** hardcover

**Edition** ed3

**Number of volumes** 5

**Publication ISBN** 978-1-76132-078-1

**Volume ISBN** 978-1-76132-080-4

**Publication URL** <https://suttacentral.net/editions/sn/en/sujato>

**Source URL** <https://github.com/suttacentral/bilara-data/tree/published/translation/en/sujato/sutta/sn>

**Publication number** scpub4

Map of Jambudipa is by Jonas David Mitja Lang, and is released by him under Creative Commons Zero (CC0).

Published by SuttaCentral

*SuttaCentral,  
c/o Alwis & Alwis Pty Ltd  
Kaurua Country,  
Suite 12,  
198 Greenhill Road,  
Eastwood,  
SA 5063,  
Australia*

# Contents

## LINKED DISCOURSES ON CAUSATION

### ***The Chapter on the Buddhas***

SN 12.1	Dependent Origination ( <i>Paṭiccasamuppādasutta</i> )	2
SN 12.2	Analysis ( <i>Vibhaṅgasutta</i> )	3
SN 12.3	Practice ( <i>Paṭipadāsutta</i> )	5
SN 12.4	About Vipassī ( <i>Vipassīsutta</i> )	5
SN 12.5	Sikhī ( <i>Sikhīsutta</i> )	9
SN 12.6	Vessabhū ( <i>Vessabhūsutta</i> )	10
SN 12.7	Kakusandha ( <i>Kakusandhasutta</i> )	10
SN 12.8	Koṇāgamana ( <i>Koṇāgamanasutta</i> )	10
SN 12.9	Kassapa ( <i>Kassapasutta</i> )	10
SN 12.10	Gotama ( <i>Gotamasutta</i> )	11

### ***The Chapter on Fuel***

SN 12.11	Fuel ( <i>Āhārasutta</i> )	13
SN 12.12	Phagguna of the Top-Knot ( <i>Moḷiyaphaggunasutta</i> )	14
SN 12.13	Ascetics and Brahmins ( <i>Samaṇabrāhmaṇasutta</i> )	15
SN 12.14	Ascetics and Brahmins (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyasamaṇabrāhmaṇasutta</i> )	16
SN 12.15	Kaccānagotta ( <i>Kaccānagottasutta</i> )	17

SN 12.16	A Dhamma Speaker ( <i>Dhammakathikasutta</i> )	18
SN 12.17	With Kassapa, the Naked Ascetic ( <i>Acelakassapasutta</i> )	19
SN 12.18	With Timbaruka ( <i>Timbarukasutta</i> )	22
SN 12.19	The Astute and the Foolish ( <i>Bālapaṇḍitasutta</i> )	23
SN 12.20	Conditions ( <i>Paccayasutta</i> )	24

### ***The Chapter on the Ten Powers***

SN 12.21	The Ten Powers ( <i>Dasabalasutta</i> )	27
SN 12.22	The Ten Powers (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyaḍasabalasutta</i> )	28
SN 12.23	Vital Conditions ( <i>Upanisasutta</i> )	29
SN 12.24	Followers of Other Religions ( <i>Aññatitthiyasutta</i> )	31
SN 12.25	With Bhūmija ( <i>Bhūmijasutta</i> )	34
SN 12.26	With Upavāna ( <i>Upavāṇasutta</i> )	36
SN 12.27	Conditions ( <i>Paccayasutta</i> )	37
SN 12.28	A Mendicant ( <i>Bhikkhusutta</i> )	39
SN 12.29	Ascetics and Brahmins ( <i>Samaṇabrāhmaṇasutta</i> )	40
SN 12.30	Ascetics and Brahmins (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyasamaṇabrāhmaṇasutta</i> )	41

### ***The Chapter with Kaḷāra the Aristocrat***

SN 12.31	What Has Come to Be ( <i>Bhūtasutta</i> )	42
SN 12.32	With Kaḷāra the Aristocrat ( <i>Kaḷārasutta</i> )	44
SN 12.33	Grounds for Knowledge ( <i>Ñāṇavatthusutta</i> )	47
SN 12.34	Grounds for Knowledge (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyañāṇavatthusutta</i> )	50
SN 12.35	Ignorance is a Condition ( <i>Avijjāpaccayasutta</i> )	51
SN 12.36	Ignorance is a Condition (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyaavijjāpaccayasutta</i> )	53

SN 12.37	Not Yours ( <i>Natumhasutta</i> )	54
SN 12.38	Intention ( <i>Cetanāsutta</i> )	55
SN 12.39	Intention (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyacetanāsutta</i> )	56
SN 12.40	Intention (3rd) ( <i>Tatīyacetanāsutta</i> )	57

### ***The Chapter on Householders***

SN 12.41	Dangers and Threats ( <i>Pañcaverabhayasutta</i> )	59
SN 12.42	Dangers and Threats (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyapañcaverabhayasutta</i> )	61
SN 12.43	Suffering ( <i>Dukkhasutta</i> )	62
SN 12.44	The World ( <i>Lokasutta</i> )	64
SN 12.45	At Ñātika ( <i>Ñātikasutta</i> )	65
SN 12.46	A Certain Brahmin ( <i>Aññatarabrāhmaṇasutta</i> )	66
SN 12.47	Jānussoṇi ( <i>Jānussoṇisutta</i> )	67
SN 12.48	A Cosmologist ( <i>Lokāyatikasutta</i> )	68
SN 12.49	A Noble Disciple ( <i>Ariyasāvakasutta</i> )	68
SN 12.50	A Noble Disciple (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyaariyasāvakasutta</i> )	70

### ***The Chapter on Suffering***

SN 12.51	An Inquiry ( <i>Parivīmamsanasutta</i> )	72
SN 12.52	Grasping ( <i>Upādānasutta</i> )	76
SN 12.53	Fetters ( <i>Samyojanasutta</i> )	77
SN 12.54	Fetters (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyasamyojanasutta</i> )	78
SN 12.55	A Great Tree ( <i>Mahārukkhasutta</i> )	79
SN 12.56	A Great Tree (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyamahārukkhasutta</i> )	80
SN 12.57	A Sapling ( <i>Taruṇarukkhasutta</i> )	81
SN 12.58	Name and Form ( <i>Nāmarūpasutta</i> )	82
SN 12.59	Consciousness ( <i>Viññāṇasutta</i> )	82
SN 12.60	Sources ( <i>Nidānasutta</i> )	83

### ***The Great Chapter***

SN 12.61	Unlearned ( <i>Assutavāsutta</i> )	86
----------	------------------------------------	----

SN 12.62	Unlearned (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyaassutavāsutta</i> )	87
SN 12.63	A Child's Flesh ( <i>Puttamamsasutta</i> )	89
SN 12.64	If There Is Desire ( <i>Atthirāgasutta</i> )	92
SN 12.65	The City ( <i>Nagarasutta</i> )	95
SN 12.66	Self-examination ( <i>Sammasasutta</i> )	98
SN 12.67	Bundles of Reeds ( <i>Naḷakalāpīsutta</i> )	102
SN 12.68	At Kosambī ( <i>Kosambisutta</i> )	105
SN 12.69	Surge ( <i>Upayantisutta</i> )	107
SN 12.70	The Wanderer Susīma ( <i>Susimaparibbājakasutta</i> )	108
<b><i>The Chapter on Ascetics and Brahmins</i></b>		
SN 12.71	Old Age and Death ( <i>Jarāmaraṇasutta</i> )	117
SN 12.72–81	A Set of Ten on Rebirth, Etc. ( <i>Jātisuttādidasaka</i> )	118

#### CONSECUTIVE REPETITIONS

##### ***The Teacher, etc.***

SN 12.82	The Teacher ( <i>Satthusutta</i> )	120
SN 12.83–92	The Teacher (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyasatthusuttādidasaka</i> )	120

##### ***Sets of Eleven on Training, Etc.***

SN 12.93–213	Sets of Eleven on Training, Etc. ( <i>Sikkhāsuttādipeyyālaekādasaka</i> )	122
--------------	--	-----

#### LINKED DISCOURSES ON COMPREHENSION

##### ***The Chapter on Comprehension***

SN 13.1	A Fingernail ( <i>Nakhasikhāsutta</i> )	124
SN 13.2	A Lotus Pond ( <i>Pokkharāṇīsutta</i> )	125
SN 13.3	Where the Waters Flow Together ( <i>Sambhejjaudakasutta</i> )	125



SN 13.4	Where the Waters Flow Together (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyasambhejjaudakasutta</i> )	126
SN 13.5	The Earth ( <i>Pathavīsutta</i> )	127
SN 13.6	The Earth (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyapathavīsutta</i> )	127
SN 13.7	The Ocean ( <i>Samuddasutta</i> )	128
SN 13.8	The Ocean (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyasamuddasutta</i> )	128
SN 13.9	A Mountain ( <i>Pabbatasutta</i> )	129
SN 13.10	A Mountain (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyapabbatasutta</i> )	129
SN 13.11	A Mountain (3rd) ( <i>Tatīyapabbatasutta</i> )	130

## LINKED DISCOURSES ON THE ELEMENTS

### ***The Chapter on Diversity***

SN 14.1	Diversity of Elements ( <i>Dhātunānattasutta</i> )	132
SN 14.2	Diversity of Contacts ( <i>Phassanānattasutta</i> )	132
SN 14.3	Not Diversity of Contacts ( <i>Nophassanānattasutta</i> )	133
SN 14.4	Diversity of Feelings ( <i>Vedanānānattasutta</i> )	133
SN 14.5	Diversity of Feelings (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyavedanānānattasutta</i> )	134
SN 14.6	External Diversity of Elements ( <i>Bāhiradhātunānattasutta</i> )	135
SN 14.7	Diversity of Perceptions ( <i>Saññānānattasutta</i> )	135
SN 14.8	No Diversity of Searches ( <i>Nopariyesanānānattasutta</i> )	136
SN 14.9	Diversity of Gains ( <i>Bāhiraphassanānattasutta</i> )	137
SN 14.10	No Diversity of Gains ( <i>Dutiyabāhiraphassanānattasutta</i> )	138

### ***Chapter Two***

SN 14.11	Seven Elements ( <i>Sattadhātusutta</i> )	140
SN 14.12	With a Cause ( <i>Sanidānasutta</i> )	141
SN 14.13	In the Brick Hall ( <i>Giṇṇakāvasathasutta</i> )	143

SN 14.14	Bad Convictions ( <i>Hinādhimuttikasutta</i> )	144
SN 14.15	Walking Together ( <i>Caṅkamasutta</i> )	144
SN 14.16	With Verses ( <i>Sagāthāsutta</i> )	146
SN 14.17	Faithless ( <i>Assaddhasaṃsandanasutta</i> )	147
SN 14.18	Beginning With the Faithless ( <i>Assaddhamūlakasutta</i> )	148
SN 14.19	Beginning With the Shameless ( <i>Ahīrikamūlakasutta</i> )	149
SN 14.20	Beginning With Imprudence ( <i>Anottappamūlakasutta</i> )	149
SN 14.21	Beginning With the Unlearned ( <i>Appassutamūlakasutta</i> )	150
SN 14.22	Beginning With the Lazy ( <i>Kusītamūlakasutta</i> )	150

### ***The Chapter on Ways of Performing Deeds***

SN 14.23	Lacking Immersion ( <i>Asamāhitasutta</i> )	151
SN 14.24	Unethical ( <i>Dussīlasutta</i> )	151
SN 14.25	The Five Precepts ( <i>Pañcasikkhāpadasutta</i> )	152
SN 14.26	Seven Ways of Performing Deeds ( <i>Sattakammaṃpathasutta</i> )	152
SN 14.27	Ten Ways of Performing Deeds ( <i>Dasakammaṃpathasutta</i> )	153
SN 14.28	The Eightfold Path ( <i>Aṭṭhaṅgikasutta</i> )	153
SN 14.29	Ten Factored Path ( <i>Dasāṅgasutta</i> )	154

### ***Chapter Four***

SN 14.30	Four Elements ( <i>Catudhātusutta</i> )	155
SN 14.31	Before Awakening ( <i>Pubbasaṃbodhasutta</i> )	155
SN 14.32	In Search of Gratification ( <i>Acarīmasutta</i> )	156
SN 14.33	If There Was No ( <i>Nocedāmasutta</i> )	157
SN 14.34	Exclusively Painful ( <i>Ekantaḍḍikkhasutta</i> )	158
SN 14.35	Taking Pleasure ( <i>Abhinandasutta</i> )	159

SN 14.36	Arising ( <i>Uppādasutta</i> )	159
SN 14.37	Ascetics and Brahmins ( <i>Samaṇabrāhmaṇasutta</i> )	160
SN 14.38	Ascetics and Brahmins (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyasamaṇabrāhmaṇasutta</i> )	160
SN 14.39	Ascetics and Brahmins (3rd) ( <i>Tatīyasamaṇabrāhmaṇasutta</i> )	161

## LINKED DISCOURSES ON THE UNKNOWNABLE BEGINNING

### ***Chapter One***

SN 15.1	Grass and Sticks ( <i>Tiṇakaṭṭhasutta</i> )	163
SN 15.2	The Earth ( <i>Pathavīsutta</i> )	164
SN 15.3	Tears ( <i>Assusutta</i> )	164
SN 15.4	Mother's Milk ( <i>Khīrasutta</i> )	165
SN 15.5	A Mountain ( <i>Pabbatasutta</i> )	166
SN 15.6	A Mustard Seed ( <i>Sāsapasutta</i> )	166
SN 15.7	Disciples ( <i>Sāvakasutta</i> )	167
SN 15.8	The Ganges ( <i>Gaṅgāsutta</i> )	168
SN 15.9	A Stick ( <i>Daṇḍasutta</i> )	169
SN 15.10	A Single Person ( <i>Puggalasutta</i> )	169

### ***Chapter Two***

SN 15.11	In a Sorry State ( <i>Duggatasutta</i> )	171
SN 15.12	In a Good Way ( <i>Sukhitasutta</i> )	171
SN 15.13	Thirty Mendicants ( <i>Timsamattasutta</i> )	172
SN 15.14	Mother ( <i>Mātusutta</i> )	173
SN 15.15	Father ( <i>Pitusutta</i> )	173
SN 15.16	Brother ( <i>Bhātusutta</i> )	174
SN 15.17	Sister ( <i>Bhaginisutta</i> )	174
SN 15.18	Son ( <i>Puttasutta</i> )	174

SN 15.19	Daughter ( <i>Dhītusutta</i> )	175
SN 15.20	Mount Vepulla ( <i>Vepullapabbatasutta</i> )	175

## LINKED DISCOURSES WITH KASSAPA

### ***The Chapter with Kassapa***

SN 16.1	Content ( <i>Santutṭhasutta</i> )	179
SN 16.2	Imprudent ( <i>Anottappīsutta</i> )	180
SN 16.3	Like the Moon ( <i>Candūpamāsutta</i> )	181
SN 16.4	Visiting Families ( <i>Kulūpakasutta</i> )	183
SN 16.5	Old Age ( <i>Jiṇṇasutta</i> )	184
SN 16.6	Advice ( <i>Ovādasutta</i> )	185
SN 16.7	Advice (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyaovādasutta</i> )	187
SN 16.8	Advice (3rd) ( <i>Tatiyaovādasutta</i> )	188
SN 16.9	Absorptions and Insights ( <i>Jhānābhiññasutta</i> )	189
SN 16.10	The Nuns' Quarters ( <i>Upassayasutta</i> )	192
SN 16.11	Robes ( <i>Cīvarasutta</i> )	194
SN 16.12	The Realized One After Death ( <i>Parammarāṇasutta</i> )	197
SN 16.13	The Counterfeit of the True Teaching ( <i>Saddhammappatirūpakasutta</i> )	199

## LINKED DISCOURSES ON GAINS AND HONOR

### ***Chapter One***

SN 17.1	Brutal ( <i>Dāruṇasutta</i> )	202
SN 17.2	A Hook ( <i>Baḷisasutta</i> )	202
SN 17.3	A Turtle ( <i>Kummasutta</i> )	203
SN 17.4	A Fleecy Sheep ( <i>Dīghalomikasutta</i> )	204
SN 17.5	A Dung Beetle ( <i>Miḷhakasutta</i> )	204
SN 17.6	A Bolt of Lightning ( <i>Asanisutta</i> )	205
SN 17.7	A Poisoned Arrow ( <i>Diddhasutta</i> )	206

SN 17.8	A Jackal ( <i>Singālasutta</i> )	206
SN 17.9	Gale-force Winds ( <i>Verambhasutta</i> )	207
SN 17.10	With Verses ( <i>Sagāthakasutta</i> )	207

### **Chapter Two**

SN 17.11	A Gold Cup ( <i>Suvaṇṇapātisutta</i> )	209
SN 17.12	A Silver Pot ( <i>Rūpiyapātisutta</i> )	209
SN 17.13–20	A Gold Ingot, Etc. ( <i>Suvaṇṇanikkhasuttādiatṭhaka</i> )	210

### **Chapter Three**

SN 17.21	A Female ( <i>Mātugāmasutta</i> )	211
SN 17.22	The Finest Lady in the Land ( <i>Kalyāṇīsutta</i> )	211
SN 17.23	An Only Son ( <i>Eka puttakasutta</i> )	212
SN 17.24	An Only Daughter ( <i>Ekadhītusutta</i> )	212
SN 17.25	Ascetics and Brahmins ( <i>Samaṇabrāhmaṇasutta</i> )	213
SN 17.26	Ascetics and Brahmins (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyasamaṇabrāhmaṇasutta</i> )	213
SN 17.27	Ascetics and Brahmins (3rd) ( <i>Tatīyasamaṇabrāhmaṇasutta</i> )	214
SN 17.28	Skin ( <i>Chavisutta</i> )	214
SN 17.29	A Rope ( <i>Rajjusutta</i> )	214
SN 17.30	A Mendicant With Defilements Ended ( <i>Bhikkhusutta</i> )	215

### **Chapter Four**

SN 17.31	Schism ( <i>Bhindisutta</i> )	216
SN 17.32	Skillful Root ( <i>Kusalamūlasutta</i> )	216
SN 17.33	Skillful Quality ( <i>Kusaladhammasutta</i> )	217
SN 17.34	Bright Quality ( <i>Sukkadhammasutta</i> )	217
SN 17.35	Shortly After He Left ( <i>Acirapakkantasutta</i> )	217
SN 17.36	Five Hundred Carts ( <i>Pañcarathasatasutta</i> )	218

SN 17.37	Mother ( <i>Mātusutta</i> )	219
SN 17.38–43	Father, Etc. ( <i>Pitusuttādichakka</i> )	219

## LINKED DISCOURSES WITH RĀHULA

### **Chapter One**

SN 18.1	The Eye, Etc. ( <i>Cakkhusutta</i> )	222
SN 18.2	Sights, Etc. ( <i>Rūpasutta</i> )	223
SN 18.3	Consciousness ( <i>Viññāṇasutta</i> )	224
SN 18.4	Contact ( <i>Samphassasutta</i> )	224
SN 18.5	Feeling ( <i>Vedanāsutta</i> )	225
SN 18.6	Perceptions ( <i>Saññāsutta</i> )	225
SN 18.7	Intention ( <i>Saṅcetanāsutta</i> )	226
SN 18.8	Craving ( <i>Taṇhāsutta</i> )	226
SN 18.9	Elements ( <i>Dhātusutta</i> )	227
SN 18.10	The Aggregates ( <i>Khandhasutta</i> )	227

### **Chapter Two**

SN 18.11	The Eye, Etc. ( <i>Cakkhusutta</i> )	229
SN 18.12–20	The Nine Discourses on Sights, Etc. ( <i>Rūpādisuttanavaka</i> )	230
SN 18.21	Tendency ( <i>Anusayasutta</i> )	231
SN 18.22	Rid of Conceit ( <i>Apagatasutta</i> )	232

## LINKED DISCOURSES WITH LAKKHAṆA

### **Chapter One**

SN 19.1	A Skeleton ( <i>Aṭṭhisutta</i> )	234
SN 19.2	A Piece of Meat ( <i>Pesisutta</i> )	235
SN 19.3	A Piece of Flesh ( <i>Piṇḍasutta</i> )	236
SN 19.4	A Flayed Man ( <i>Nicchavisutta</i> )	236
SN 19.5	Sword Hairs ( <i>Asilomasutta</i> )	236
SN 19.6	Spear Hairs ( <i>Sattisutta</i> )	237

SN 19.7	Arrow Hairs ( <i>Usulomasutta</i> )	237
SN 19.8	Needle Hairs ( <i>Sūcilomasutta</i> )	237
SN 19.9	Needle Hairs (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyasūcilomasutta</i> )	238
SN 19.10	Pot Balls ( <i>Kumbhaṇḍasutta</i> )	238

### ***Chapter Two***

SN 19.11	Over His Head ( <i>Sasīsakasutta</i> )	239
SN 19.12	A Dung Eater ( <i>Gūthakhādasutta</i> )	239
SN 19.13	A Flayed Woman ( <i>Nicchavittthisutta</i> )	240
SN 19.14	A Fishwife ( <i>Maṅgulitthisutta</i> )	240
SN 19.15	A Sweltering Woman ( <i>Okilīnisutta</i> )	240
SN 19.16	A Headless Trunk ( <i>Asīsakasutta</i> )	241
SN 19.17	A Bad Monk ( <i>Pāpabhikkhusutta</i> )	241
SN 19.18	A Bad Nun ( <i>Pāpabhikkhunīsutta</i> )	241
SN 19.19	A Bad Trainee Nun ( <i>Pāpasikkhamānasutta</i> )	242
SN 19.20	A Bad Novice Monk ( <i>Pāpasāmaṇerasutta</i> )	242
SN 19.21	A Bad Novice Nun ( <i>Pāpasāmaṇerīsutta</i> )	242

## LINKED DISCOURSES WITH SIMILES

### ***The Chapter on the Similes***

SN 20.1	A Roof Peak ( <i>Kūṭasutta</i> )	245
SN 20.2	A Fingernail ( <i>Nakhasikhasutta</i> )	245
SN 20.3	Families ( <i>Kulasutta</i> )	246
SN 20.4	Rice Pots ( <i>Okkhāsutta</i> )	246
SN 20.5	A Spear ( <i>Sattisutta</i> )	247
SN 20.6	The Archers ( <i>Dhanuggahasutta</i> )	248
SN 20.7	The Drum Peg ( <i>Āṇisutta</i> )	248
SN 20.8	Wood Blocks ( <i>Kalīngarasutta</i> )	249
SN 20.9	A Bull Elephant ( <i>Nāgasutta</i> )	250
SN 20.10	A Cat ( <i>Bilārasutta</i> )	251
SN 20.11	A Jackal ( <i>Siṅgālasutta</i> )	252

SN 20.12	A Jackal (2nd) ( <i>Dutiyaṅgālasutta</i> )	253
----------	--	-----

## LINKED DISCOURSES WITH MONKS

### ***The Chapter on Monks***

SN 21.1	With Kolita ( <i>Kolitasutta</i> )	255
SN 21.2	With Upatissa ( <i>Upatissasutta</i> )	256
SN 21.3	A Mound of Salt ( <i>Ghaṭasutta</i> )	257
SN 21.4	A Junior Mendicant ( <i>Navasutta</i> )	258
SN 21.5	With Sujāta ( <i>Sujātasutta</i> )	260
SN 21.6	With Bhaddiya the Dwarf ( <i>Lakuṇḍakabhaddiyasutta</i> )	260
SN 21.7	With Visākha, Pañcālī's Son ( <i>Visākhasutta</i> )	261
SN 21.8	With Nanda ( <i>Nandasutta</i> )	262
SN 21.9	With Tissa ( <i>Tissasutta</i> )	263
SN 21.10	A Mendicant Named Senior ( <i>Theranāmakasutta</i> )	264
SN 21.11	With Mahākappina ( <i>Mahākappinasutta</i> )	265
SN 21.12	Companions ( <i>Sahāyakasutta</i> )	266
Colophon		268



# LINKED DISCOURSES ON CAUSATION

# The Chapter on the Buddhas

SN 12.1

## Dependent Origination

*Paṭiccasamuppādasutta*

- 1.1 SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near Sāvattthī in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. There the Buddha addressed the mendicants, “Mendicants!”
- 1.5 “Venerable sir,” they replied. The Buddha said this:
- 1.7 “Mendicants, I will teach you dependent origination. Listen and apply your mind well, I will speak.”
- 1.9 “Yes, sir,” they replied. The Buddha said this:
- 2.1 “And what is dependent origination? Ignorance is a condition for choices. Choices are a condition for consciousness. Consciousness is a condition for name and form. Name and form are conditions for the six sense fields. The six sense fields are conditions for contact. Contact is a condition for feeling. Feeling is a condition for craving. Craving is a condition for grasping. Grasping is a condition for continued existence. Continued existence is a condition for rebirth. Rebirth is a condition for old age and death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress to come to be. That is how this entire mass of suffering originates. This is called dependent origination.
- 3.1 When ignorance fades away and ceases with nothing left over, choices cease. When choices cease, consciousness ceases. When consciousness ceases, name and form cease. When name and form

cease, the six sense fields cease. When the six sense fields cease, contact ceases. When contact ceases, feeling ceases. When feeling ceases, craving ceases. When craving ceases, grasping ceases. When grasping ceases, continued existence ceases. When continued existence ceases, rebirth ceases. When rebirth ceases, old age and death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress cease. That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.”

That is what the Buddha said. Satisfied, the mendicants approved what the Buddha said. 3.13

SN 12.2

## Analysis

*Vibhaṅgasutta*

At Sāvatthī. 1.1

“Mendicants, I will teach and analyze for you dependent origination. Listen and apply your mind well, I will speak.” 1.2

“Yes, sir,” they replied. The Buddha said this: 1.4

“And what is dependent origination? Ignorance is a condition for choices. Choices are a condition for consciousness. Consciousness is a condition for name and form. Name and form are conditions for the six sense fields. The six sense fields are conditions for contact. Contact is a condition for feeling. Feeling is a condition for craving. Craving is a condition for grasping. Grasping is a condition for continued existence. Continued existence is a condition for rebirth. Rebirth is a condition for old age and death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress to come to be. That is how this entire mass of suffering originates. 2.1

And what is old age and death? The old age, decrepitude, broken teeth, grey hair, wrinkly skin, diminished vitality, and failing faculties of the various sentient beings in the various orders of sentient beings. This is called old age. The passing away, passing on, disintegration, demise, mortality, death, decease, breaking up of the aggregates, and laying to rest of the corpse of the various sentient 3.1

beings in the various orders of sentient beings. This is called death. Such is old age, and such is death. This is called old age and death.

4.1 And what is rebirth? The rebirth, inception, conception, reincarnation, manifestation of the aggregates, and acquisition of the sense fields of the various sentient beings in the various orders of sentient beings. This is called rebirth.

5.1 And what is continued existence? There are these three states of existence. Existence in the sensual realm, the realm of luminous form, and the formless realm. This is called continued existence.

6.1 And what is grasping? There are these four kinds of grasping. Grasping at sensual pleasures, views, precepts and observances, and theories of a self. This is called grasping.

7.1 And what is craving? There are these six classes of craving. Craving for sights, sounds, smells, tastes, touches, and ideas. This is called craving.

8.1 And what is feeling? There are these six classes of feeling. Feeling born of contact through the eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, and mind. This is called feeling.

9.1 And what is contact? There are these six classes of contact. Contact through the eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, and mind. This is called contact.

10.1 And what are the six sense fields? The sense fields of the eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, and mind. These are called the six sense fields.

11.1 And what are name and form? Feeling, perception, intention, contact, and application of mind. This is called name. The four principal states, and form derived from the four principal states. This is called form. Such is name and such is form. These are called name and form.

12.1 And what is consciousness? There are these six classes of consciousness. Eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, and mind consciousness. This is called consciousness.

13.1 And what are choices? There are three kinds of choices. Choices by way of body, speech, and mind. These are called choices.

And what is ignorance? Not knowing about suffering, the origin 14.1  
of suffering, the cessation of suffering, and the practice that leads  
to the cessation of suffering. This is called ignorance.

And so, ignorance is a condition for choices. 15.1

Choices are a condition for consciousness. ... That is how this 15.2  
entire mass of suffering originates. When ignorance fades away and  
ceases with nothing left over, choices cease. When choices cease,  
consciousness ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering  
ceases.”

### SN 12.3

## Practice

### *Paṭipadāsutta*

At Sāvatthī. 1.1

“Mendicants, I will teach you the wrong practice and the right 1.2  
practice. Listen and apply your mind well, I will speak.”

“Yes, sir,” they replied. The Buddha said this: 1.4

“And what’s the wrong practice? Ignorance is a condition for 2.1  
choices.

Choices are a condition for consciousness. ... That is how this 2.3  
entire mass of suffering originates. This is called the wrong practice.

And what’s the right practice? When ignorance fades away and 3.1  
ceases with nothing left over, choices cease. When choices cease,  
consciousness ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering  
ceases. This is called the right practice.”

### SN 12.4

## About Vipassī

### *Vipassīsutta*

At Sāvatthī. 1.1

- 1.2 “Mendicants, Vipassī the Blessed One, the perfected one, the fully awakened Buddha had this thought before his awakening, when he was still unawakened but intent on awakening: ‘Alas, this world has fallen into trouble. It’s born, grows old, dies, passes away, and is reborn, yet it doesn’t understand how to escape from this suffering, from old age and death. Oh, when will an escape be found from this suffering, from old age and death?’
- 2.1 Then Vipassī, the one intent on awakening, thought: ‘When what exists is there old age and death? What is a condition for old age and death?’ Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended with wisdom: ‘When rebirth exists there’s old age and death. Rebirth is a condition for old age and death.’
- 3.1 Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what exists is there rebirth? What is a condition for rebirth?’ Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended with wisdom: ‘When continued existence exists there’s rebirth. Continued existence is a condition for rebirth.’
- 4.1 Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what exists is there continued existence? What is a condition for continued existence?’ Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended with wisdom: ‘When grasping exists there’s continued existence. Grasping is a condition for continued existence.’
- 5.1 Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what exists is there grasping? What is a condition for grasping?’ Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended with wisdom: ‘When craving exists there’s grasping. Craving is a condition for grasping.’
- 6.1 Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what exists is there craving? What is a condition for craving?’ Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended with wisdom: ‘When feeling exists there’s craving. Feeling is a condition for craving.’
- 7.1 Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what exists is there feeling? What is a condition for feeling?’ Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended with wisdom: ‘When contact exists there’s feeling. Contact is a condition for feeling.’

Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what exists is there contact? What is a condition for contact?’ Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended with wisdom: ‘When the six sense fields exist there’s contact. The six sense fields are a condition for contact.’ 8.1

Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what exists are there the six sense fields? What is a condition for the six sense fields?’ Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended with wisdom: ‘When name and form exist there are the six sense fields. Name and form are a condition for the six sense fields.’ 9.1

Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what exists are there name and form? What is a condition for name and form?’ Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended with wisdom: ‘When consciousness exists there are name and form. Consciousness is a condition for name and form.’ 10.1

Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what exists is there consciousness? What is a condition for consciousness?’ Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended with wisdom: ‘When choices exist there’s consciousness. Choices are a condition for consciousness.’ 11.1

Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what exists are there choices? What is a condition for choices?’ Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended with wisdom: ‘When ignorance exists there are choices. Ignorance is a condition for choices.’ 12.1

And so, ignorance is a condition for choices. 13.1

Choices are a condition for consciousness. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates. ‘Origination, origination.’ While Vipassī was intent on awakening, such was the vision, knowledge, wisdom, realization, and light that arose in him regarding teachings not learned before from another. 13.2

Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what doesn’t exist is there no old age and death? When what ceases do old age and death cease?’ Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended 14.1

with wisdom: ‘When rebirth doesn’t exist there’s no old age and death. When rebirth ceases, old age and death cease.’

- 15.1 Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what doesn’t exist is there no rebirth? When what ceases does rebirth cease?’ Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended with wisdom: ‘When continued existence doesn’t exist there’s no rebirth. When continued existence ceases, rebirth ceases.’

- 16.1 Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what doesn’t exist is there no continued existence? When what ceases does continued existence cease?’ Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended with wisdom: ‘When grasping doesn’t exist there’s no continued existence. When grasping ceases, continued existence ceases.’

- 17.1 Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what doesn’t exist is there no grasping? When what ceases does grasping cease?’ Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended with wisdom: ‘When craving doesn’t exist there’s no grasping. When craving ceases, grasping ceases.’

- 18.1 Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what doesn’t exist is there no craving? When what ceases does craving cease?’ Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended with wisdom: ‘When feeling doesn’t exist there’s no craving. When feeling ceases, craving ceases.’

- 19.1 Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what doesn’t exist is there no feeling? When what ceases does feeling cease?’ Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended with wisdom: ‘When contact doesn’t exist there’s no feeling. When contact ceases, feeling ceases.’

- 20.1 Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what doesn’t exist is there no contact? When what ceases does contact cease?’ Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended with wisdom: ‘When the six sense fields don’t exist there’s no contact. When the six sense fields cease, contact ceases.’



Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what doesn’t exist are there no 21.1  
 six sense fields? When what ceases do the six sense fields cease?’  
 Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended  
 with wisdom: ‘When name and form don’t exist there are no six  
 sense fields. When name and form cease, the six sense fields cease.’

Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what doesn’t exist are there no 22.1  
 name and form? When what ceases do name and form cease?’  
 Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended  
 with wisdom: ‘When consciousness doesn’t exist there are no  
 name and form. When consciousness ceases, name and form cease.’

Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what doesn’t exist is there no 23.1  
 consciousness? When what ceases does consciousness cease?’  
 Then, through rational application of mind, Vipassī comprehended  
 with wisdom: ‘When choices don’t exist there’s no consciousness.  
 When choices cease, consciousness ceases.’

Then Vipassī thought: ‘When what doesn’t exist are there no 24.1  
 choices? When what ceases do choices cease?’ Then, through ra-  
 tional application of mind, Vipassī comprehended with wisdom:  
 ‘When ignorance doesn’t exist there are no choices. When igno-  
 rance ceases, choices cease.’

And so, when ignorance ceases, choices cease. When choices 25.1  
 cease, consciousness ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of  
 suffering ceases. ‘Cessation, cessation.’ Such was the vision, knowl-  
 edge, wisdom, realization, and light that arose in Vipassī, the one  
 intent on awakening, regarding teachings not learned before from  
 another.”

*(Tell in full for each of the seven Buddhas.)*

## SN 12.5

### Sikhī

#### *Sikhīsutta*

“Sikhī, the Blessed One, the perfected one, the fully awakened 1.1  
 Buddha ...”

SN 12.6

Vessabhū

*Vessabhūsutta*

- 1.1 “Vessabhū, the Blessed One, the perfected one, the fully awakened Buddha ...”

SN 12.7

Kakusandha

*Kakusandhasutta*

- 1.1 “Kakusandha, the Blessed One, the perfected one, the fully awakened Buddha ...”

SN 12.8

Koṇāgamana

*Koṇāgamanasutta*

- 1.1 “Koṇāgamana, the Blessed One, the perfected one, the fully awakened Buddha ...”

SN 12.9

Kassapa

*Kassapasutta*

- 1.1 “Kassapa, the Blessed One, the perfected one, the fully awakened Buddha ...”

SN 12.10

## Gotama

*Gotamasutta*

“Mendicants, before my awakening—when I was still unawakened 1.1  
but intent on awakening—I thought: ‘Alas, this world has fallen  
into trouble. It’s born, grows old, dies, passes away, and is reborn,  
yet it doesn’t understand how to escape from this suffering, from  
old age and death. Oh, when will an escape be found from this  
suffering, from old age and death?’

Then it occurred to me: ‘When what exists is there old age 2.1  
and death? What is a condition for old age and death?’ Then,  
through rational application of mind, I comprehended with wis-  
dom: ‘When rebirth exists there’s old age and death. Rebirth is a  
condition for old age and death.’

Then it occurred to me: ‘When what exists is there rebirth? 3.1  
... continued existence ... grasping ... craving ... feeling ... con-  
tact ... the six sense fields ... name and form ... consciousness  
... ‘When what exists are there choices? What is a condition for  
choices?’ Then, through rational application of mind, I compre-  
hended with wisdom: ‘When ignorance exists there are choices.  
Ignorance is a condition for choices.’

And so, ignorance is a condition for choices. 4.1

Choices are a condition for consciousness. ... That is how this 4.2  
entire mass of suffering originates. ‘Origination, origination.’ Such  
was the vision, knowledge, wisdom, realization, and light that arose  
in me regarding teachings not learned before from another.

Then it occurred to me: ‘When what doesn’t exist is there no 5.1  
old age and death? When what ceases do old age and death cease?’  
Then, through rational application of mind, I comprehended with  
wisdom: ‘When rebirth doesn’t exist there’s no old age and death.  
When rebirth ceases, old age and death cease.’

Then it occurred to me: ‘When what doesn’t exist is there no re- 6.1  
birth? ... continued existence ... grasping ... craving ... feeling ...

contact ... the six sense fields ... name and form ... consciousness ... 'When what doesn't exist are there no choices? When what ceases do choices cease?' Then, through rational application of mind, I comprehended with wisdom: 'When ignorance doesn't exist there are no choices. When ignorance ceases, choices cease.'

- 7.1 And so, when ignorance ceases, choices cease. When choices cease, consciousness ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases. 'Cessation, cessation.' Such was the vision, knowledge, wisdom, realization, and light that arose in me regarding teachings not learned before from another."

# The Chapter on Fuel

SN 12.11

## Fuel

*Āhārasutta*

SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near 1.1  
Sāvathī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. ...

“Mendicants, there are these four fuels. They maintain sentient 1.3  
beings that have been born and help those that are about to be  
born. What four? Solid food, whether solid or subtle; contact  
is the second, mental intention the third, and consciousness the  
fourth. These are the four fuels that maintain sentient beings that  
have been born and help those that are about to be born.

What is the source, origin, birthplace, and inception of these 2.1  
four fuels? Craving. And what is the source, origin, birthplace, and  
inception of craving? Feeling. And what is the source of feeling?  
Contact. And what is the source of contact? The six sense fields.  
And what is the source of the six sense fields? Name and form.  
And what is the source of name and form? Consciousness. And  
what is the source of consciousness? Choices. And what is the  
source of choices? Ignorance.

And so, ignorance is a condition for choices. 3.1

Choices are a condition for consciousness. ... That is how this 3.2  
entire mass of suffering originates. When ignorance fades away and  
ceases with nothing left over, choices cease. When choices cease,

consciousness ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.”

SN 12.12

## Phagguna of the Top-Knot

*Moḷiyaphaggunasutta*

1.1 At Sāvattḥi.

1.2 “Mendicants, there are these four fuels. They maintain sentient beings that have been born and help those that are about to be born. What four? Solid food, whether solid or subtle; contact is the second, mental intention the third, and consciousness the fourth. These are the four fuels that maintain sentient beings that have been born and help those that are about to be born.”

2.1 When he said this, Venerable Phagguna of the Top-Knot said to the Buddha, “But sir, who consumes the fuel for consciousness?”

2.3 “That’s not a fitting question,” said the Buddha.

2.4 “I don’t speak of one who consumes. If I were to speak of one who consumes, then it would be fitting to ask who consumes. But I don’t speak like that. Hence it would be fitting to ask: ‘Consciousness is a fuel for what?’ And a fitting answer to this would be: ‘Consciousness is a fuel that conditions rebirth into a new state of existence in the future. When that which has been reborn is present, there are the six sense fields. The six sense fields are a condition for contact.’”

3.1 “But sir, who contacts?”

3.2 “That’s not a fitting question,” said the Buddha.

3.3 “I don’t speak of one who contacts. If I were to speak of one who contacts, then it would be fitting to ask who contacts. But I don’t speak like that. Hence it would be fitting to ask: ‘What is a condition for contact?’ And a fitting answer to this would be: ‘The six sense fields are a condition for contact. Contact is a condition for feeling.’”

4.1 “But sir, who feels?”

“That’s not a fitting question,” said the Buddha. 4.2

“I don’t speak of one who feels. If I were to speak of one who 4.3  
feels, then it would be fitting to ask who feels. But I don’t speak  
like that. Hence it would be fitting to ask: ‘What is a condition  
for feeling?’ And a fitting answer to this would be: ‘Contact is a  
condition for feeling. Feeling is a condition for craving.’”

“But sir, who craves?” 5.1

“That’s not a fitting question,” said the Buddha. 5.2

“I don’t speak of one who craves. If I were to speak of one who 5.3  
craves, then it would be fitting to ask who craves. But I don’t speak  
like that. Hence it would be fitting to ask: ‘What is a condition  
for craving?’ And a fitting answer to this would be: ‘Feeling is a  
condition for craving. Craving is a condition for grasping.’”

“But sir, who grasps?” 6.1

“That’s not a fitting question,” said the Buddha. 6.2

“I don’t speak of one who grasps. If I were to speak of one who 6.3  
grasps, then it would be fitting to ask who grasps. But I don’t speak  
like that. Hence it would be fitting to ask: ‘What is a condition  
for grasping?’ And a fitting answer to this would be: ‘Craving is  
a condition for grasping. Grasping is a condition for continued  
existence.’ ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates.

When the six fields of contact fade away and cease with noth- 7.1  
ing left over, contact ceases. When contact ceases, feeling ceases.  
When feeling ceases, craving ceases. When craving ceases, grasping  
ceases. When grasping ceases, continued existence ceases. When  
continued existence ceases, rebirth ceases. When rebirth ceases,  
old age and death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress  
cease. That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.”

SN 12.13

## Ascetics and Brahmins

*Samaṇabrāhmaṇasutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

- 1.2 “Mendicants, there are ascetics and brahmins who don’t understand old age and death, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. They don’t understand rebirth ... continued existence ... grasping ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense fields ... name and form ... consciousness ... They don’t understand choices, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. I don’t deem them as true ascetics and brahmins. Those venerables don’t realize the goal of life as an ascetic or brahmin, and don’t live having realized it with their own insight.
- 2.1 There are ascetics and brahmins who do understand old age and death, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. They understand rebirth ... continued existence ... grasping ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense fields ... name and form ... consciousness ... They understand choices, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. I deem them as true ascetics and brahmins. Those venerables realize the goal of life as an ascetic or brahmin, and live having realized it with their own insight.”

SN 12.14

## Ascetics and Brahmins (2nd)

*Dutiyasamaṇabrāhmaṇasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 “Mendicants, there are ascetics and brahmins who don’t understand these things, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. What things don’t they understand?
- 2.1 They don’t understand old age and death, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. They don’t understand rebirth ... continued existence ... grasping ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense fields ... name and form ... consciousness ... They don’t understand choices, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. They



don't understand these things, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. I don't deem them as true ascetics and brahmins. Those venerables don't realize the goal of life as an ascetic or brahmin, and don't live having realized it with their own insight.

There are ascetics and brahmins who do understand these 3.1 things, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. What things do they understand?

They understand old age and death, their origin, their cessation, 4.1 and the practice that leads to their cessation. They understand rebirth ... continued existence ... grasping ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense fields ... name and form ... consciousness ... They understand choices, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. They understand these things, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. I deem them as true ascetics and brahmins. Those venerables realize the goal of life as an ascetic or brahmin, and live having realized it with their own insight."

SN 12.15

## Kaccānagotta

*Kaccānagottasutta*

At Sāvattḥi. 1.1

Then Venerable Kaccānagotta went up to the Buddha, bowed, 1.2 sat down to one side, and said to him:

"Sir, they speak of this thing called 'right view'. How is right view 1.3 defined?"

"Kaccāna, this world mostly relies on the dual notions of ex- 2.1 istence and non-existence.

But when you truly see the origin of the world with right under- 2.2 standing, the concept of non-existence regarding the world does not occur. And when you truly see the cessation of the world with

right understanding, the concept of existence regarding the world does not occur.

- 2.4 The world is for the most part shackled by attraction, grasping, and insisting.
- 2.5 But if—when it comes to this attraction, grasping, mental fixation, insistence, and underlying tendency—you don’t get attracted, grasp, and commit to the thought, ‘my self’, you’ll have no doubt or uncertainty that what arises is just suffering arising, and what ceases is just suffering ceasing. Your knowledge about this is independent of others.
- 2.7 This is how right view is defined.
- 3.1 ‘All exists’: this is one extreme.
- 3.2 ‘All does not exist’: this is the second extreme.
- 3.3 Avoiding these two extremes, the Realized One teaches by the middle way:
- 3.4 ‘Ignorance is a condition for choices. Choices are a condition for consciousness. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates.
- 3.7 When ignorance fades away and ceases with nothing left over, choices cease. When choices cease, consciousness ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.’”

SN 12.16

## A Dhamma Speaker

*Dhammakathikasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 Then a mendicant went up to the Buddha, bowed, sat down to one side, and said to him:
- 1.3 “Sir, they speak of a ‘Dhamma speaker’. How is a Dhamma speaker defined?”
- 2.1 “If a mendicant teaches Dhamma for disillusionment, dispassion, and cessation regarding old age and death, they’re qualified to be called a ‘mendicant who speaks on Dhamma’. If they practice

for disillusionment, dispassion, and cessation regarding old age and death, they're qualified to be called a 'mendicant who practices in line with the teaching.' If they're freed by not grasping, by disillusionment, dispassion, and cessation regarding old age and death, they're qualified to be called a 'mendicant who has attained extinguishment in this very life.'

If a mendicant teaches Dhamma for disillusionment regarding rebirth ... continued existence ... grasping ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense fields ... name and form ... consciousness ... choices ... If a mendicant teaches Dhamma for disillusionment, dispassion, and cessation regarding ignorance, they're qualified to be called a 'mendicant who speaks on Dhamma.' If they practice for disillusionment, dispassion, and cessation regarding ignorance, they're qualified to be called a 'mendicant who practices in line with the teaching.' If they're freed by not grasping, by disillusionment, dispassion, and cessation regarding ignorance, they're qualified to be called a 'mendicant who has attained extinguishment in this very life.'” 3.1

SN 12.17

## With Kassapa, the Naked Ascetic

*Acelakassapasutta*

SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near Rājagaha, in the Bamboo Grove, the squirrels' feeding ground. 1.1

Then the Buddha robed up in the morning and, taking his bowl and robe, entered Rājagaha for alms. The naked ascetic Kassapa saw the Buddha coming off in the distance. He went up to the Buddha, and exchanged greetings with him. 1.3

When the greetings and polite conversation were over, he stood to one side and said to the Buddha, 1.6

“I'd like to ask Mister Gotama about a certain point, if you'd take the time to answer.” 1.7

- 1.8 “Kassapa, it’s the wrong time for questions. We’ve entered an inhabited area.”
- 2.1 A second time, and a third time, Kassapa spoke to the Buddha and the Buddha replied. When this was said, Kassapa said to the Buddha,
- 2.8 “I don’t want to ask much.”
- 2.9 “Ask what you wish, Kassapa.”
- 3.1 “Well, Mister Gotama, is suffering made by oneself?”
- 3.2 “Not so, Kassapa,” said the Buddha.
- 3.3 “Then is suffering made by another?”
- 3.4 “Not so, Kassapa,” said the Buddha.
- 3.5 “Well, is suffering made by both oneself and another?”
- 3.6 “Not so, Kassapa,” said the Buddha.
- 3.7 “Then does suffering arise by chance, not made by oneself or another?”
- 3.8 “Not so, Kassapa,” said the Buddha.
- 3.9 “Well, is there no such thing as suffering?”
- 3.10 “It’s not that there’s no such thing as suffering. Suffering is real.”
- 3.12 “Then does Mister Gotama not know or see suffering?”
- 3.13 “It’s not that I don’t know or see suffering. I do know suffering, I do see suffering.”
- 4.1 “Mister Gotama, when asked these questions, you say ‘not so’. Yet you say that there is such a thing as suffering. And you say that you do know suffering, and you do see suffering. Sir, explain suffering to me! Teach me about suffering!”
- 5.1 “Suppose that the person who does the deed experiences the result. Then for one who has existed since the beginning, suffering is made by oneself. This statement leans toward eternalism. Suppose that one person does the deed and another experiences the result. Then for one stricken by feeling, suffering is made by another. This statement leans toward annihilationism. Avoiding these two extremes, the Realized One teaches by the middle way: ‘Ignorance is a condition for choices.

Choices are a condition for consciousness. . . . That is how this 5.5  
entire mass of suffering originates. When ignorance fades away and  
ceases with nothing left over, choices cease. When choices cease,  
consciousness ceases. . . . That is how this entire mass of suffering  
ceases.’”

When this was said, Kassapa said to the Buddha, “Excellent, sir! 6.1  
Excellent! As if he were righting the overturned, or revealing the  
hidden, or pointing out the path to the lost, or lighting a lamp in  
the dark so people with clear eyes can see what’s there, the Buddha  
has made the teaching clear in many ways. I go for refuge to the  
Buddha, to the teaching, and to the mendicant Saṅgha. Sir, may I  
receive the going forth, the ordination in the Buddha’s presence?”

“Kassapa, if someone formerly ordained in another sect wishes 7.1  
to take the going forth, the ordination in this teaching and training,  
they must spend four months on probation. When four months  
have passed, if the mendicants are satisfied, they’ll give the going  
forth, the ordination into monkhood. However, I have recognized  
individual differences.”

“Sir, if four months probation are required in such a case, I’ll 8.1  
spend four years on probation. When four years have passed, if  
the mendicants are satisfied, let them give me the going forth, the  
ordination into monkhood.”

And the naked ascetic Kassapa received the going forth, the 9.1  
ordination in the Buddha’s presence. Not long after his ordination,  
Venerable Kassapa, living alone, withdrawn, diligent, keen, and  
resolute, soon realized the supreme culmination of the spiritual  
path in this very life. He lived having achieved with his own insight  
the goal for which gentlemen rightly go forth from the lay life to  
homelessness.

He understood: “Rebirth is ended; the spiritual journey has 9.3  
been completed; what had to be done has been done; there is  
nothing further for this place.” And Venerable Kassapa became  
one of the perfected.

SN 12.18

## With Timbaruka

*Timbarukasutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

1.2 Then the wanderer Timbaruka went up to the Buddha, and exchanged greetings with him. When the greetings and polite conversation were over, he sat down to one side and said to the Buddha:

2.1 “Well, Mister Gotama, are pleasure and pain made by oneself?”

2.2 “Not so, Timbaruka,” said the Buddha.

2.3 “Then are pleasure and pain made by another?”

2.4 “Not so, Timbaruka,” said the Buddha.

2.5 “Well, are pleasure and pain made by both oneself and another?”

2.6 “Not so, Timbaruka,” said the Buddha.

2.7 “Then do pleasure and pain arise by chance, not made by oneself or another?”

2.8 “Not so, Timbaruka,” said the Buddha.

2.9 “Well, is there no such thing as pleasure and pain?”

2.10 “It’s not that there’s no such thing as pleasure and pain. Pleasure and pain are real.”

2.12 “Then does Mister Gotama not know or see suffering?”

2.13 “It’s not that I don’t know or see pleasure and pain. I do know pleasure and pain, I do see pleasure and pain.”

3.1 “Mister Gotama, when asked these questions, you say ‘not so’. Yet you say that there is such a thing as pleasure and pain. And you say that you do know pleasure and pain, and you do see pleasure and pain. Sir, explain pleasure and pain to me! Teach me about pleasure and pain!”

4.1 “Suppose that the feeling and the one who feels it are the same thing. Then for one who has existed since the beginning, pleasure and pain is made by oneself. I don’t say this. Suppose that the feeling is one thing and the one who feels it is another. Then for one stricken by feeling, pleasure and pain is made by another. I

don't say this. Avoiding these two extremes, the Realized One teaches by the middle way: 'Ignorance is a condition for choices.

Choices are a condition for consciousness. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates. When ignorance fades away and ceases with nothing left over, choices cease. When choices cease, consciousness ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.'” 4.5

When he said this, the wanderer Timbaruka said to the Buddha, 5.1  
 “Excellent, Mister Gotama! Excellent! ... I go for refuge to Mister Gotama, to the teaching, and to the mendicant Saṅgha. From this day forth, may Mister Gotama remember me as a lay follower who has gone for refuge for life.”

SN 12.19

## The Astute and the Foolish

*Bālapaṇḍitasutta*

At Sāvattḥī. 1.1

“Mendicants, for a fool shrouded by ignorance and fettered by craving, this body has been produced. So there is the duality of this body and external name and form. Contact depends on this duality. When contacted through one or other of the six sense fields, the fool experiences pleasure and pain. 1.2

For an astute person shrouded by ignorance and fettered by craving, this body has been produced. So there is the duality of this body and external name and form. Contact depends on this duality. When contacted through one or other of the six sense fields, the astute person experiences pleasure and pain. 2.1

What, then, is the difference between the foolish and the astute?” 3.1

“Our teachings are rooted in the Buddha. He is our guide and our refuge. Sir, may the Buddha himself please clarify the meaning of this. The mendicants will listen and remember it.” 3.2

- 4.1 “Well then, mendicants, listen and apply your mind well, I will speak.”
- 4.2 “Yes, sir,” they replied. The Buddha said this:
- 5.1 “For a fool shrouded by ignorance and fettered by craving, this body has been produced. But the fool has not given up that ignorance or finished that craving. Why is that? The fool has not completed the spiritual journey for the complete ending of suffering. Therefore, when their body breaks up, the fool is reborn in another body. When reborn in another body, they’re not freed from rebirth, old age, and death, from sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress. They’re not freed from suffering, I say.
- 6.1 For an astute person shrouded by ignorance and fettered by craving, this body has been produced. But the astute person has given up that ignorance and finished that craving. Why is that? The astute person has completed the spiritual journey for the complete ending of suffering. Therefore, when their body breaks up, the astute person is not reborn in another body. Not being reborn in another body, they’re freed from rebirth, old age, and death, from sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress. They’re freed from suffering, I say. This is the difference here between the foolish and the astute, that is, leading the spiritual life.”

SN 12.20

## Conditions

*Paccayasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatti.
- 1.2 “Mendicants, I will teach you dependent origination and dependently originated phenomena. Listen and apply your mind well, I will speak.”
- 1.4 “Yes, sir,” they replied. The Buddha said this:
- 2.1 “And what is dependent origination? Rebirth is a condition for old age and death. Whether Realized Ones arise or not, this law of nature persists, this regularity of natural principles, this invariance



of natural principles, specific conditionality. A Realized One understands this and comprehends it, then he explains, teaches, asserts, establishes, clarifies, analyzes, and reveals it. ‘Look,’ he says, ‘Rebirth is a condition for old age and death.’

Continued existence is a condition for rebirth ... Grasping is a condition for continued existence ... Craving is a condition for grasping ... 3.1

Feeling is a condition for craving ... Contact is a condition for feeling ... The six sense fields are a condition for contact ... Name and form are conditions for the six sense fields ... 3.4

Consciousness is a condition for name and form ... 3.8

Choices are a condition for consciousness ... Ignorance is a condition for choices. Whether Realized Ones arise or not, this law of nature persists, this regularity of natural principles, this invariance of natural principles, specific conditionality. A Realized One understands this and comprehends it, then he explains, teaches, asserts, establishes, clarifies, analyzes, and reveals it. ‘Look,’ he says, ‘Ignorance is a condition for choices.’ So the fact that this is real, not unreal, not otherwise; the specific conditionality of it: this is called dependent origination. 3.9

And what are the dependently originated phenomena? Old age and death are impermanent, conditioned, dependently originated, liable to end, vanish, fade away, and cease. Rebirth ... Continued existence ... Grasping ... Craving ... 4.1

Feeling ... Contact ... The six sense fields ... Name and form ... 4.7

Consciousness ... 4.11

Choices ... Ignorance is impermanent, conditioned, dependently originated, liable to end, vanish, fade away, and cease. These are called the dependently originated phenomena. 4.12

When a noble disciple has clearly seen with right wisdom this dependent origination and these dependently originated phenomena as they are, it is quite impossible for them to turn back to the past, thinking: ‘Did I exist in the past? Did I not exist in the past?’ 5.1

What was I in the past? How was I in the past? After being what, what did I become in the past?’ Or to turn forward to the future, thinking: ‘Will I exist in the future? Will I not exist in the future? What will I be in the future? How will I be in the future? After being what, what will I become in the future?’ Or to be undecided about the present, thinking: ‘Am I? Am I not? What am I? How am I? This sentient being—where did it come from? And where will it go?’ Why is that? Because that noble disciple has clearly seen with right wisdom this dependent origination and these dependently originated phenomena as they are.”

# The Chapter on the Ten Powers

SN 12.21

## The Ten Powers

*Dasabalasutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

“Mendicants, a Realized One has ten powers and four kinds of self-assurance. With these he claims the bull’s place, roars his lion’s roar in the assemblies, and turns the divine wheel. 1.2

Such is form, such is the origin of form, such is the ending of form. Such is feeling, such is the origin of feeling, such is the ending of feeling. Such is perception, such is the origin of perception, such is the ending of perception. Such are choices, such is the origin of choices, such is the ending of choices. Such is consciousness, such is the origin of consciousness, such is the ending of consciousness. 1.3

When this exists, that is; due to the arising of this, that arises. When this doesn’t exist, that is not; due to the cessation of this, that ceases. That is: 1.8

Ignorance is a condition for choices. 1.10

Choices are a condition for consciousness. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates. When ignorance fades away and ceases with nothing left over, choices cease. When choices cease, consciousness ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.” 1.11

SN 12.22

## The Ten Powers (2nd)

*Dutiyadasabalasutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

1.2 “Mendicants, a Realized One has ten powers and four kinds of self-assurance. With these he claims the bull’s place, roars his lion’s roar in the assemblies, and turns the divine wheel.

1.3 Such is form, such is the origin of form, such is the ending of form. Such is feeling, such is the origin of feeling, such is the ending of feeling. Such is perception, such is the origin of perception, such is the ending of perception. Such are choices, such is the origin of choices, such is the ending of choices. Such is consciousness, such is the origin of consciousness, such is the ending of consciousness.

1.8 When this exists, that is; due to the arising of this, that arises. When this doesn’t exist, that is not; due to the cessation of this, that ceases. That is:

1.10 Ignorance is a condition for choices.

1.11 Choices are a condition for consciousness. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates. When ignorance fades away and ceases with nothing left over, choices cease. When choices cease, consciousness ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.

2.1 So the teaching has been well explained by me, made clear, opened, illuminated, and stripped of patchwork. Just this much is quite enough for a gentleman who has gone forth out of faith to rouse up his energy. ‘Gladly, let only skin, sinews, and tendons remain! Let the flesh and blood waste away in my body! I will not stop trying until I have achieved what is possible by human strength, energy, and vigor.’

3.1 A lazy person lives in suffering, mixed up with bad, unskillful qualities, and ruins a great deal of their own good. An energetic person lives happily, secluded from bad, unskillful qualities, and fulfills a great deal of their own good.

The best isn't reached by the worst. The best is reached by the best. This spiritual life is the cream, mendicants, and the Teacher is before you. 3.3

So you should rouse up energy for attaining the unattained, achieving the unachieved, and realizing the unrealized, thinking: 'In this way our going forth will not be wasted, but will be fruitful and fertile. And our use of robes, almsfood, lodgings, and medicines and supplies for the sick shall be of great fruit and benefit for those who offered them.' That's how you should train. 3.6

Considering what is good for yourself, mendicants, is quite enough for you to persist with diligence. Considering what is good for others is quite enough for you to persist with diligence. Considering what is good for both is quite enough for you to persist with diligence." 3.10

## SN 12.23

# Vital Conditions

## *Upanisāsutta*

At Sāvattḥī. 1.1

"Mendicants, I say that the ending of defilements is for one who knows and sees, not for one who does not know or see. For one who knows and sees what? 'Such is form, such is the origin of form, such is the ending of form. Such is feeling ... Such is perception ... Such are choices ... Such is consciousness, such is the origin of consciousness, such is the ending of consciousness.' The ending of the defilements is for one who knows and sees this. 1.2

I say that this knowledge of ending has a vital condition, it doesn't lack a vital condition. And what is it? You should say: 'Freedom.' I say that freedom has a vital condition, it doesn't lack a vital condition. And what is it? You should say: 'Dispassion.' I say that dispassion has a vital condition. And what is it? You should say: 'Disillusionment.' I say that disillusionment has a vital condition. And what is it? You should say: 'Truly knowing and 2.1

seeing.’ I say that truly knowing and seeing has a vital condition. And what is it? You should say: ‘Immersion.’ I say that immersion has a vital condition.

3.1 And what is it? You should say: ‘Bliss.’ I say that bliss has a vital condition. And what is it? You should say: ‘Tranquility.’ I say that tranquility has a vital condition. And what is it? You should say: ‘Rapture.’ I say that rapture has a vital condition. And what is it? You should say: ‘Joy.’ I say that joy has a vital condition. And what is it? You should say: ‘Faith.’ I say that faith has a vital condition.

4.1 And what is it? You should say: ‘Suffering.’ I say that suffering has a vital condition. And what is it? You should say: ‘Rebirth.’ I say that rebirth has a vital condition. And what is it? You should say: ‘Continued existence.’ I say that continued existence has a vital condition. And what is it? You should say: ‘Grasping.’ I say that grasping has a vital condition. And what is it? You should say: ‘Craving.’ I say that craving has a vital condition.

5.1 And what is it? You should say: ‘Feeling.’ ... You should say: ‘Contact.’ ... You should say: ‘The six sense fields.’ ... You should say: ‘Name and form.’ ... You should say: ‘Consciousness.’ ... You should say: ‘Choices.’ ... I say that choices have a vital condition, they don’t lack a vital condition. And what is the vital condition for choices? You should say: ‘Ignorance.’

6.1 So ignorance is a vital condition for choices. Choices are a vital condition for consciousness. Consciousness is a vital condition for name and form. Name and form are vital conditions for the six sense fields. The six sense fields are vital conditions for contact. Contact is a vital condition for feeling. Feeling is a vital condition for craving. Craving is a vital condition for grasping. Grasping is a vital condition for continued existence. Continued existence is a vital condition for rebirth. Rebirth is a vital condition for suffering. Suffering is a vital condition for faith. Faith is a vital condition for joy. Joy is a vital condition for rapture. Rapture is a vital condition for tranquility. Tranquility is a vital condition for bliss. Bliss is a vital condition for immersion. Immersion is a

vital condition for truly knowing and seeing. Truly knowing and seeing is a vital condition for disillusionment. Disillusionment is a vital condition for dispassion. Dispassion is a vital condition for freedom. Freedom is a vital condition for the knowledge of ending.

It's like when the heavens rain heavily on a mountain top, and 7.1  
the water flows downhill to fill the hollows, crevices, and creeks. As they become full, they fill up the pools. The pools fill up the lakes, the lakes fill up the streams, and the streams fill up the rivers. And as the rivers become full, they fill up the ocean.

In the same way, ignorance is a vital condition for choices. ... 8.1  
Freedom is a vital condition for the knowledge of ending."

SN 12.24

## Followers of Other Religions

*Aññatitthiyasutta*

Near Rājagaha, in the Bamboo Grove. Then Venerable Sāriputta 1.1  
robed up in the morning and, taking his bowl and robe, entered Rājagaha for alms. Then it occurred to him, "It's too early to wander for alms in Rājagaha. Why don't I visit the monastery of the wanderers of other religions?"

Then he went to the monastery of the wanderers of other re- 2.1  
ligions and exchanged greetings with the wanderers there. When the greetings and polite conversation were over, he sat down to one side. The wanderers said to him:

"Reverend Sāriputta, there are ascetics and brahmins who teach 3.1  
the efficacy of deeds. Some of them declare that suffering is made by oneself. Some of them declare that suffering is made by another. Some of them declare that suffering is made by both oneself and another. Some of them declare that suffering arises by chance, not made by oneself or another. What does the ascetic Gotama say about this? How does he explain it? How should we answer so as to repeat what the ascetic Gotama has said, and not misrepresent him

with an untruth? How should we explain in line with his teaching, with no legitimate grounds for rebuttal and criticism?”

- 4.1 “Reverends, the Buddha said that suffering is dependently originated. Dependent on what? Dependent on contact. If you said this you would repeat what the Buddha has said, and not misrepresent him with an untruth. You would explain in line with his teaching, and there would be no legitimate grounds for rebuttal and criticism.
- 5.1 Consider the ascetics and brahmins who teach the efficacy of deeds. In the case of those who declare that suffering is made by oneself, that’s conditioned by contact. In the case of those who declare that suffering is made by another, that’s also conditioned by contact. In the case of those who declare that suffering is made by oneself and another, that’s also conditioned by contact. In the case of those who declare that suffering arises by chance, not made by oneself or another, that’s also conditioned by contact.
- 6.1 Consider the ascetics and brahmins who teach the efficacy of deeds. In the case of those who declare that suffering is made by oneself, it’s impossible that they will experience that without contact. In the case of those who declare that suffering is made by another, it’s impossible that they will experience that without contact. In the case of those who declare that suffering is made by oneself and another, it’s impossible that they will experience that without contact. In the case of those who declare that suffering arises by chance, not made by oneself or another, it’s impossible that they will experience that without contact.”
- 7.1 Venerable Ānanda heard this discussion between Venerable Sāriputta and those wanderers of other religions. Then Ānanda wandered for alms in Rājagaha. After the meal, on his return from almsround, he went to the Buddha, bowed, sat down to one side, and informed the Buddha of all they had discussed.
- 8.1 “Good, good, Ānanda! It’s just as Sāriputta has so rightly explained. I have said that suffering is dependently originated. Dependent on what? Dependent on contact. Saying this you would



repeat what I have said, and not misrepresent me with an untruth. You would explain in line with my teaching, and there would be no legitimate grounds for rebuttal and criticism.

Consider the ascetics and brahmins who teach the efficacy of deeds. In the case of those who declare that suffering is made by oneself, that's conditioned by contact. ... In the case of those who declare that suffering arises by chance, not made by oneself or another, that's also conditioned by contact. 9.1

In the case of those who declare that suffering is made by oneself, it's impossible that they will experience that without contact. ... In the case of those who declare that suffering arises by chance, not made by oneself or another, it's impossible that they will experience that without contact. 10.1

Ānanda, this one time I was staying near Rājagaha, in the Bamboo Grove, the squirrels' feeding ground. Then I robed up in the morning and, taking my bowl and robe, entered Rājagaha for alms. Then I thought: 'It's too early to wander for alms in Rājagaha. Why don't I visit the monastery of the wanderers of other religions?' 11.1

Then I went to the monastery of the wanderers of other religions and exchanged greetings with the wanderers there. When the greetings and polite conversation were over, I sat down to one side. ... 12.1

(The wanderers asked the Buddha the very same questions, and he gave the same answers.) 13.1

"It's incredible, sir, it's amazing, how the whole matter is stated with one phrase. Could there be a detailed explanation of this matter that is both deep and appears deep?" 17.1

"Well then, Ānanda, clarify this matter yourself." 18.1

"Sir, suppose they were to ask me: 'Reverend Ānanda, what is the source, origin, birthplace, and inception of old age and death?' I'd answer like this: 'Reverends, rebirth is the source, origin, birthplace, and inception of old age and death.' That's how I'd answer such a question. 18.2

- 19.1 Suppose they were to ask me: ‘What is the source of rebirth?’ I’d answer like this: ‘Continued existence is the source of rebirth.’ That’s how I’d answer such a question.
- 20.1 Suppose they were to ask me: ‘What is the source of continued existence?’ I’d answer like this: ‘Grasping is the source of continued existence.’ That’s how I’d answer such a question.
- 21.1 Suppose they were to ask me: ‘What is the source of grasping?’ ... craving ... feeling ... Suppose they were to ask me: ‘What is the source of contact?’ I’d answer like this: ‘The six sense fields are the source, origin, birthplace, and inception of contact.’ ‘When the six fields of contact fade away and cease with nothing left over, contact ceases. When contact ceases, feeling ceases. When feeling ceases, craving ceases. When craving ceases, grasping ceases. When grasping ceases, continued existence ceases. When continued existence ceases, rebirth ceases. When rebirth ceases, old age and death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress cease. That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.’ That’s how I’d answer such a question.”

## SN 12.25

## With Bhūmija

*Bhūmijasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattḥi.
- 1.2 Then in the late afternoon, Venerable Bhūmija came out of retreat, went to Venerable Sāriputta, and exchanged greetings with him. When the greetings and polite conversation were over, he sat down to one side and said to him:
- 2.1 “Reverend Sāriputta, there are ascetics and brahmins who teach the efficacy of deeds. Some of them declare that pleasure and pain are made by oneself. Some of them declare that pleasure and pain are made by another. Some of them declare that pleasure and pain are made by both oneself and another. Some of them declare that pleasure and pain arise by chance, not made by oneself or another.

What does the Buddha say about this? How does he explain it? How should we answer so as to repeat what the Buddha has said, and not misrepresent him with an untruth? How should we explain in line with his teaching, with no legitimate grounds for rebuttal and criticism?”

“Reverend, the Buddha said that pleasure and pain are dependently originated. Dependent on what? Dependent on contact. If you said this you would repeat what the Buddha has said, and not misrepresent him with an untruth. You would explain in line with his teaching, and there would be no legitimate grounds for rebuttal and criticism. 3.1

Consider the ascetics and brahmins who teach the efficacy of deeds. In the case of those who declare that pleasure and pain are made by oneself, that’s conditioned by contact. ... In the case of those who declare that pleasure and pain arise by chance, not made by oneself or another, that’s also conditioned by contact. 4.1

Consider the ascetics and brahmins who teach the efficacy of deeds. In the case of those who declare that pleasure and pain are made by oneself, it’s impossible that they will experience that without contact. ... In the case of those who declare that pleasure and pain arise by chance, not made by oneself or another, it’s impossible that they will experience that without contact.” 5.1

Venerable Ānanda heard this discussion between Venerable Sāriputta and Venerable Bhūmija. Then Venerable Ānanda went up to the Buddha, bowed, sat down to one side, and informed the Buddha of all they had discussed. 6.1

“Good, good, Ānanda! It’s just as Sāriputta has so rightly explained. I have said that pleasure and pain are dependently originated. Dependent on what? Dependent on contact. Saying this you would repeat what I have said, and not misrepresent me with an untruth. You would explain in line with my teaching, and there would be no legitimate grounds for rebuttal and criticism. 7.1

Consider the ascetics and brahmins who teach the efficacy of deeds. In the case of those who declare that pleasure and pain are 8.1

made by oneself, that's conditioned by contact. ... In the case of those who declare that pleasure and pain arise by chance, not made by oneself or another, that's also conditioned by contact.

- 9.1 Consider the ascetics and brahmins who teach the efficacy of deeds. In the case of those who declare that pleasure and pain are made by oneself, it's impossible that they will experience that without contact. ... In the case of those who declare that pleasure and pain arise by chance, not made by oneself or another, it's impossible that they will experience that without contact.
- 10.1 Ānanda, as long as there's a body, the intention that gives rise to bodily action causes pleasure and pain to arise in oneself. As long as there's a voice, the intention that gives rise to verbal action causes pleasure and pain to arise in oneself. As long as there's a mind, the intention that gives rise to mental action causes pleasure and pain to arise in oneself. But these only apply when conditioned by ignorance.
- 11.1 By oneself one instigates the choice that gives rise to bodily, verbal, and mental action, conditioned by which that pleasure and pain arise in oneself. Or else others instigate the choice ... One consciously instigates the choice ... Or else one unconsciously instigates the choice ...
- 14.1 Ignorance is included in all these things. But when ignorance fades away and ceases with nothing left over, there is no body and no voice and no mind, conditioned by which that pleasure and pain arise in oneself. There is no field, no ground, no scope, no basis, conditioned by which that pleasure and pain arise in oneself."

SN 12.26

## With Upavāna

*Upavāṇasutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

1.2 Then Venerable Upavāna went up to the Buddha, bowed, sat down to one side, and said to him:

“Sir, there are some ascetics and brahmins who declare that suffering is made by oneself. There are some who declare that suffering is made by another. There are some who declare that suffering is made by both oneself and another. There are some who declare that suffering arises by chance, not made by oneself or another. 2.1

What does the Buddha say about this? How does he explain it? How should we answer so as to repeat what the Buddha has said, and not misrepresent him with an untruth? How should we explain in line with his teaching, with no legitimate grounds for rebuttal and criticism? 2.5

“Upavāna, I have said that suffering is dependently originated. Dependent on what? Dependent on contact. Saying this you would repeat what I have said, and not misrepresent me with an untruth. You would explain in line with my teaching, and there would be no legitimate grounds for rebuttal and criticism. 3.1

In the case of those ascetics and brahmins who declare that suffering is made by oneself, that’s conditioned by contact. ... In the case of those who declare that suffering arises by chance, not made by oneself or another, that’s also conditioned by contact. 4.1

In the case of those ascetics and brahmins who declare that suffering is made by oneself, it’s impossible that they will experience that without contact. ... In the case of those who declare that suffering arises by chance, not made by oneself or another, it’s impossible that they will experience that without contact.” 5.1

SN 12.27

## Conditions

*Paccayasutta*

At Sāvattī. 1.1

“Ignorance is a condition for choices. 1.2

Choices are a condition for consciousness. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates. 1.3

- 2.1 And what is old age and death? The old age, decrepitude, broken teeth, grey hair, wrinkly skin, diminished vitality, and failing faculties of the various sentient beings in the various orders of sentient beings. This is called old age. The passing away, passing on, disintegration, demise, mortality, death, decease, breaking up of the aggregates, and laying to rest of the corpse of the various sentient beings in the various orders of sentient beings. This is called death. Such is old age, and such is death. This is called old age and death. Rebirth is the origin of old age and death. When rebirth ceases, old age and death cease. The practice that leads to the cessation of old age and death is simply this noble eightfold path, that is: right view, right thought, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness, and right immersion.
- 3.1 And what is rebirth? ... And what is continued existence? ... And what is grasping? ... And what is craving? ... And what is feeling? ... And what is contact? ... And what are the six sense fields? ... And what are name and form? ... And what is consciousness?  
...
- 4.1 And what are choices? There are three kinds of choices. Choices by way of body, speech, and mind. These are called choices. Ignorance is the origin of choices. When ignorance ceases, choices cease. The practice that leads to the cessation of choices is simply this noble eightfold path, that is: right view, right thought, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness, and right immersion.
- 5.1 A noble disciple understands conditions, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. Such a noble disciple is one who is called 'one accomplished in view', 'one accomplished in vision', 'one who has come to the true teaching', 'one who sees this true teaching', 'one endowed with a trainee's knowledge', 'one who has entered the stream of the teaching', 'a noble one with penetrative wisdom', and also 'one who stands pushing open the door to freedom from death.'"

SN 12.28

## A Mendicant

*Bhikkhusutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

“A mendicant understands old age and death, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. They understand rebirth ... continued existence ... grasping ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense fields ... name and form ... consciousness ... They understand choices, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. 1.2

And what is old age and death? The old age, decrepitude, broken teeth, grey hair, wrinkly skin, diminished vitality, and failing faculties of the various sentient beings in the various orders of sentient beings. This is called old age. The passing away, passing on, disintegration, demise, mortality, death, decease, breaking up of the aggregates, and laying to rest of the corpse of the various sentient beings in the various orders of sentient beings. This is called death. Such is old age, and such is death. This is called old age and death. Rebirth is the origin of old age and death. When rebirth ceases, old age and death cease. The practice that leads to the cessation of old age and death is simply this noble eightfold path, that is: right view, right thought, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness, and right immersion. 2.1

And what is rebirth? ... And what is continued existence? ... And what is grasping? ... And what is craving? ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense fields ... name and form ... consciousness ... 3.1

And what are choices? There are three kinds of choices. Choices by way of body, speech, and mind. These are called choices. Ignorance is the origin of choices. When ignorance ceases, choices cease. The practice that leads to the cessation of choices is simply this noble eightfold path, that is: right view, right thought, right 4.1

speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness, and right immersion.

- 5.1 A mendicant understands old age and death, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. They understand rebirth ... continued existence ... grasping ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense fields ... name and form ... consciousness ... They understand choices, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. Such a mendicant is one who is called ‘one accomplished in view’, ‘one accomplished in vision’, ‘one who has come to the true teaching’, ‘one who sees this true teaching’, ‘one endowed with a trainee’s knowledge’, ‘one who has entered the stream of the teaching’, ‘a noble one with penetrative wisdom’, and also ‘one who stands pushing open the door to freedom from death.’”

SN 12.29

## Ascetics and Brahmins

*Samaṇabrāhmaṇasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 “There are ascetics and brahmins who don’t completely understand old age and death, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. They don’t completely understand rebirth ... continued existence ... grasping ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense fields ... name and form ... consciousness ... They don’t completely understand choices, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. I don’t deem them as true ascetics and brahmins. Those venerables don’t realize the goal of life as an ascetic or brahmin, and don’t live having realized it with their own insight.
- 2.1 There are ascetics and brahmins who completely understand old age and death, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. They completely understand rebirth ... continued existence ... grasping ... craving ... feeling ... contact



... the six sense fields ... name and form ... consciousness ... They completely understand choices, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. I deem them as true ascetics and brahmins. Those venerables realize the goal of life as an ascetic or brahmin, and live having realized it with their own insight.”

SN 12.30

## Ascetics and Brahmins (2nd)

*Dutiyasamaṇabrāhmaṇasutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

“Mendicants, there are ascetics and brahmins who don’t understand old age and death, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. It’s impossible that they will abide having transcended old age and death. They don’t understand rebirth ... continued existence ... grasping ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense fields ... name and form ... consciousness ... They don’t understand choices, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. It’s impossible that they will abide having transcended choices.

1.2

There are ascetics and brahmins who do understand old age and death, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. It’s possible that they will abide having transcended old age and death. They understand rebirth ... continued existence ... grasping ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense fields ... name and form ... consciousness ... They understand choices, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. It’s possible that they will abide having transcended choices.”

2.1

# The Chapter with Kaḷāra the Aristocrat

SN 12.31

## What Has Come to Be

*Bhūtasutta*

- 1.1 At one time the Buddha was staying near Sāvattṥi.
- 1.2 Then the Buddha said to Venerable Sāriputta, “Sāriputta, this was said in ‘The Way to the Far Shore’, in ‘The Questions of Ajita’:
  - 2.1 “There are those who have appraised the teaching,  
and many kinds of trainees here.  
Tell me about their behavior, good sir,  
when asked, for you are alert.’
- 3.1 How should we see the detailed meaning of this brief statement?”
- 3.2 When he said this, Sāriputta kept silent.
- 4.1 For a second time ...
- 4.3 For a third time ...
- 6.1 Sāriputta kept silent.
- 7.1 “Sāriputta, do you see that this has come to be?”
- 7.2 “Sir, one truly sees with right wisdom that this has come to be. Seeing this, one is practicing for disillusionment, dispassion, and cessation regarding what has come to be. One truly sees with right wisdom that it originated with that as fuel. Seeing this, one is

practicing for disillusionment, dispassion, and cessation regarding the fuel for its origination. One truly sees with right wisdom that when that fuel ceases, what has come to be is liable to cease. Seeing this, one is practicing for disillusionment, dispassion, and cessation regarding what is liable to cease. In this way one is a trainee.

And what, sir, is one who has appraised the teaching? Sir, one 8.1 truly sees with right wisdom that this has come to be. Seeing this, one is freed by not grasping through disillusionment, dispassion, and cessation regarding what has come to be. One truly sees with right wisdom that it originated with that as fuel. Seeing this, one is freed by not grasping through disillusionment, dispassion, and cessation regarding the fuel for its origination. One truly sees with right wisdom that when that fuel ceases, what has come to be is liable to cease. Seeing this, one is freed by not grasping through disillusionment, dispassion, and cessation regarding what is liable to cease. In this way one has appraised the teaching.

Sir, regarding what was said in ‘The Way to the Far Shore’, in 8.9 ‘The Questions of Ajita’:

“There are those who have appraised the teaching, 9.1  
and many kinds of trainees here.  
Tell me about their behavior, good sir,  
when asked, for you are alert.’

This is how I understand the detailed meaning of what was said 10.1 in brief.”

“Good, good, Sāriputta!” (The Buddha repeated all of Sāriputta’s 11.1 explanation, concluding:)

This is how to understand the detailed meaning of what was said 14.1 in brief.”

SN 12.32

## With KaḬāra the Aristocrat

*KaḬārasutta*

1.1 At Sāvattthī.

1.2 Then the mendicant KaḬāra the Aristocrat went up to Venerable Sāriputta and exchanged greetings with him. When the greetings and polite conversation were over, he sat down to one side and said to him, “Reverend Sāriputta, the mendicant Phagguṇa of the Top-Knot has resigned the training and returned to a lesser life.”

1.5 “That venerable mustn’t have got any satisfaction in this teaching and training.”

2.1 “Well then, has Venerable Sāriputta found satisfaction in this teaching and training?”

3.1 “Reverend, I have no uncertainty.”

3.2 “But what of the future?”

4.1 “I have no doubt.”

5.1 Then KaḬāra the Aristocrat went up to the Buddha, bowed, sat down to one side, and said to him, “Sir, Venerable Sāriputta has declared enlightenment: ‘I understand: “Rebirth is ended, the spiritual journey has been completed, what had to be done has been done, there is nothing further for this place.”’”

6.1 So the Buddha addressed one of the monks, “Please, monk, in my name tell Sāriputta that the teacher summons him.”

6.4 “Yes, sir,” that monk replied. He went to Sāriputta and said to him, “Reverend Sāriputta, the teacher summons you.”

6.6 “Yes, reverend,” replied Sāriputta. He went to the Buddha, bowed, and sat down to one side. The Buddha said to him, “Sāriputta, is it really true that you have declared enlightenment: ‘I understand: “Rebirth is ended, the spiritual journey has been completed, what had to be done has been done, there is nothing further for this place.”’?”

6.9 “Sir, I did not state the matter in these words and phrases.”

“Sāriputta, no matter how a gentleman declares enlightenment, 6.10  
what he has declared should be regarded as such.”

“Sir, did I not also say that I did not state the matter in these 6.11  
words and phrases?”

“Sāriputta, suppose they were to ask you: ‘But Reverend Sā- 7.1  
riputta, how have you known and seen so that you’ve declared  
enlightenment: “I understand: ‘Rebirth is ended, the spiritual  
journey has been completed, what had to be done has been done,  
there is nothing further for this place.’” How would you answer?’”

“Sir, if they were to ask me this, I would answer: ‘Reverends, 8.1  
because of the ending of the source of rebirth, when it ended, I  
knew “it is ended”. Knowing this, I understand: “Rebirth is ended,  
the spiritual journey has been completed, what had to be done has  
been done, there is nothing further for this place.’” That’s how I’d  
answer such a question.”

“But Sāriputta, suppose they were to ask you: ‘But what is the 9.1  
source, origin, birthplace, and inception of rebirth?’ How would  
you answer?”

“Sir, if they were to ask me this, I would answer: ‘Continued 9.4  
existence is the source, origin, birthplace, and inception of rebirth.’  
That’s how I’d answer such a question.”

“But Sāriputta, suppose they were to ask you: ‘What is the 10.1  
source of continued existence?’ How would you answer?”

“Sir, if they were to ask me this, I’d answer: ‘Grasping is the 10.4  
source of continued existence.’ That’s how I’d answer such a ques-  
tion.”

“But Sāriputta, suppose they were to ask you: ‘What is the 11.1  
source of grasping?’ ... But Sāriputta, suppose they were to ask  
you: ‘What is the source of craving?’ How would you answer?”

“Sir, if they were to ask me this, I’d answer: ‘Feeling is the source 11.6  
of craving.’ That’s how I’d answer such a question.”

“But Sāriputta, suppose they were to ask you: ‘But how have 12.1  
you known and seen so that the relishing of feelings is no longer  
present?’ How would you answer?”

- 12.4 “Sir, if they were to ask me this, I’d answer: ‘Reverends, there are three feelings. What three? Pleasant, painful, and neutral feeling. These three feelings are impermanent, and what’s impermanent is suffering. When I understood this, the relishing of feelings was no longer present.’ That’s how I’d answer such a question.”
- 13.1 “Good, good, Sāriputta! The same point may also be briefly explained in this way: ‘Suffering includes whatever is felt.’
- 14.1 But Sāriputta, suppose they were to ask you: ‘But Reverend, how have you been released that you declare enlightenment: “I understand: ‘Rebirth is ended, the spiritual journey has been completed, what had to be done has been done, there is nothing further for this place.’”?’ How would you answer?”
- 14.5 “Sir, if they were to ask me this, I’d answer: ‘Because of an inner release with the ending of all grasping, I live mindfully so that defilements don’t defile me and I don’t look down on myself.’ That’s how I’d answer such a question.”
- 15.1 “Good, good, Sāriputta! The same point may also be briefly explained in this way: ‘I have no uncertainty regarding the defilements spoken of by the ascetic. I have no doubt that I’ve given them up.’”
- 15.4 That is what the Buddha said. When he had spoken, the Holy One got up from his seat and entered his dwelling.
- 16.1 Then soon after the Buddha left, Venerable Sāriputta said to the mendicants, “Reverends, the first question that the Buddha asked me was something that I’d not previously considered, so I hesitated. But when the Buddha agreed with my answer, I thought: ‘If the Buddha were to question me all day on this matter in different words and ways, I could answer all day with different words and ways. If he were to question me all night, all day and night, for two days and nights, for three, four, five, six, or seven days and nights, I could answer in different words and ways for seven days and nights.’”
- 17.1 Then KaḬāra the Aristocrat went up to the Buddha, bowed, sat down to one side, and said to him, “Sir, Venerable Sāriputta has

roared his lion's roar!" (And he told the Buddha all that Sāriputta had said.)

"Mendicant, Sāriputta has clearly comprehended the principle 18.1  
of the teachings, so that he could answer any questions I might ask  
him in different words and ways up to the seventh day and night."

SN 12.33

## Grounds for Knowledge

*Ñāṇavatthusutta*

At Sāvattḥi. 1.1

"Mendicants, I will teach forty-four grounds for knowledge. 1.2  
Listen and apply your mind well, I will speak."

"Yes, sir," they replied. The Buddha said this: 1.4

"And what are the forty-four grounds for knowledge? Knowl- 2.1  
edge of old age and death, knowledge of the origin of old age and  
death, knowledge of the cessation of old age and death, and knowl-  
edge of the practice that leads to the cessation of old age and death.  
Knowledge of rebirth ... Knowledge of continued existence ...  
Knowledge of grasping ... Knowledge of craving ... Knowledge  
of feeling ... Knowledge of contact ... Knowledge of the six sense  
fields ... Knowledge of name and form ... Knowledge of conscious-  
ness ... Knowledge of choices, knowledge of the origin of choices,  
knowledge of the cessation of choices, and knowledge of the prac-  
tice that leads to the cessation of choices. These are called the  
forty-four grounds for knowledge.

And what is old age and death? The old age, decrepitude, broken 3.1  
teeth, grey hair, wrinkly skin, diminished vitality, and failing facul-  
ties of the various sentient beings in the various orders of sentient  
beings. This is called old age. The passing away, passing on, dis-  
integration, demise, mortality, death, decease, breaking up of the  
aggregates, and laying to rest of the corpse of the various sentient  
beings in the various orders of sentient beings. This is called death.  
Such is old age, and such is death. This is called old age and death.

- 4.1 Rebirth is the origin of old age and death. When rebirth ceases, old age and death cease. The practice that leads to the cessation of old age and death is simply this noble eightfold path, that is: right view, right thought, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness, and right immersion.
- 5.1 A noble disciple understands old age and death, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. This is their knowledge of the present phenomenon. With this present phenomenon that is seen, known, immediate, attained, and fathomed, they infer to the past and future.
- 6.1 Whatever ascetics and brahmins in the past directly knew old age and death, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation, all of them directly knew these things in exactly the same way that I do now.
- 7.1 Whatever ascetics and brahmins in the future will directly know old age and death, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation, all of them will directly know these things in exactly the same way that I do now. This is their inferential knowledge.
- 8.1 A noble disciple has purified and cleansed these two knowledges—knowledge of the present phenomena, and inferential knowledge. When a noble disciple has done this, they're one who is called 'one accomplished in view', 'one accomplished in vision', 'one who has come to the true teaching', 'one who sees this true teaching', 'one endowed with a trainee's knowledge', 'one who has entered the stream of the teaching', 'a noble one with penetrative wisdom', and also 'one who stands pushing open the door to freedom from death'.
- 9.1 And what is rebirth? ... And what is continued existence? ... And what is grasping? ... And what is craving? ... And what is feeling? ... And what is contact? ... And what are the six sense fields? ... And what are name and form? ... And what is consciousness? ... And what are choices? There are three kinds of



choices. Choices by way of body, speech, and mind. These are called choices.

Ignorance is the origin of choices. When ignorance ceases, 10.1  
choices cease. The practice that leads to the cessation of choices is simply this noble eightfold path, that is: right view, right thought, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness, and right immersion.

A noble disciple understands choices, their origin, their ces- 11.1  
sation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. This is their knowledge of the present phenomenon. With this present phenomenon that is seen, known, immediate, attained, and fathomed, they infer to the past and future.

Whatever ascetics and brahmins in the past directly knew 12.1  
choices, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation, all of them directly knew these things in exactly the same way that I do now.

Whatever ascetics and brahmins in the future will directly know 13.1  
choices, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation, all of them will directly know these things in exactly the same way that I do now. This is their inferential knowledge.

A noble disciple has purified and cleansed these two knowl- 14.1  
edges—knowledge of the present phenomena, and inferential knowledge. When a noble disciple has done this, they're one who is called 'one accomplished in view', 'one accomplished in vision', 'one who has come to the true teaching', 'one who sees this true teaching', 'one endowed with a trainee's knowledge', 'one who has entered the stream of the teaching', 'a noble one with penetrative wisdom', and also 'one who stands pushing open the door to freedom from death.'"

SN 12.34

## Grounds for Knowledge (2nd)

*Dutiyañānavatthusutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 “Mendicants, I will teach seventy-seven grounds for knowledge. Listen and apply your mind well, I will speak.”
- 1.4 “Yes, sir,” they replied. The Buddha said this:
- 2.1 “And what are the seventy-seven grounds for knowledge? The knowledge that rebirth is a condition for old age and death, and the knowledge that when rebirth doesn’t exist, there is no old age and death. Also regarding the past: the knowledge that rebirth is a condition for old age and death, and the knowledge that when rebirth doesn’t exist, there is no old age and death. Also regarding the future: the knowledge that rebirth is a condition for old age and death, and the knowledge that when rebirth doesn’t exist, there is no old age and death. And also their knowledge that even this knowledge of the stability of natural principles is liable to end, vanish, fade away, and cease.
- 3.1 The knowledge that continued existence is a condition for rebirth ... The knowledge that ignorance is a condition for choices, and the knowledge that when ignorance doesn’t exist, there are no choices. Also regarding the past: the knowledge that ignorance is a condition for choices, and the knowledge that when ignorance doesn’t exist, there are no choices. Also regarding the future: the knowledge that ignorance is a condition for choices, and the knowledge that when ignorance doesn’t exist, there are no choices. And also their knowledge that even this knowledge of the stability of natural principles is liable to end, vanish, fade away, and cease. These are called the seventy-seven grounds for knowledge.”

SN 12.35

# Ignorance is a Condition

*Avijjāpaccayasutta*

- At Sāvatthī. 1.1
- “Ignorance is a condition for choices. 1.2
- Choices are a condition for consciousness. . . . That is how this 1.3
- entire mass of suffering originates.”
- When this was said, one of the mendicants asked the Buddha, 1.5
- “What are old age and death, sir, and who do they belong to?”
- “That’s not a fitting question,” said the Buddha. “You might say, 1.7
- ‘What are old age and death, and who do they belong to?’ Or you
- might say, ‘Old age and death are one thing, who they belong to is
- another.’ But both of these mean the same thing, only the phrasing
- differs. Mendicant, if you have the view that the soul and the body
- are the same thing, there is no living of the spiritual life. If you
- have the view that the soul and the body are different things, there
- is no living of the spiritual life. Avoiding these two extremes, the
- Realized One teaches by the middle way: ‘Rebirth is a condition
- for old age and death.’”
- “What is rebirth, sir, and who does it belong to?” 2.1
- “That’s not a fitting question,” said the Buddha. “You might say, 2.2
- ‘What is rebirth, and who does it belong to?’ Or you might say,
- ‘Rebirth is one thing, who it belongs to is another.’ But both of these
- mean the same thing, only the phrasing differs. Mendicant, if you
- have the view that the soul and the body are the same thing, there
- is no living of the spiritual life. If you have the view that the soul
- and the body are different things, there is no living of the spiritual
- life. Avoiding these two extremes, the Realized One teaches by the
- middle way: ‘Continued existence is a condition for rebirth.’”
- “What is continued existence, sir, and who is it for?” 3.1
- “That’s not a fitting question,” said the Buddha. “You might 3.2
- say, ‘What is continued existence, and who does it belong to?’ Or
- you might say, ‘Continued existence is one thing, who it belongs

to is another.’ But both of these mean the same thing, only the phrasing differs. Mendicant, if you have the view that the soul and the body are identical, there is no living of the spiritual life. If you have the view that the soul and the body are different things, there is no living of the spiritual life. Avoiding these two extremes, the Realized One teaches by the middle way: ‘Grasping is a condition for continued existence.’ ... ‘Craving is a condition for grasping.’ ... ‘Feeling is a condition for craving.’ ... ‘Contact is a condition for feeling.’ ... ‘The six sense fields are conditions for contact.’ ... ‘Name and form are conditions for the six sense fields.’ ... ‘Consciousness is a condition for name and form.’ ... ‘Choices are a condition for consciousness.’”

4.1 “What are choices, sir, and who do they belong to?”

4.2 “That’s not a fitting question,” said the Buddha. “You might say, ‘What are choices, and who do they belong to?’ Or you might say, ‘Choices are one thing, who they belong to is another.’ But both of these mean the same thing, only the phrasing differs. Mendicant, if you have the view that the soul and the body are the same thing, there is no living of the spiritual life. If you have the view that the soul and the body are different things, there is no living of the spiritual life. Avoiding these two extremes, the Realized One teaches by the middle way: ‘Ignorance is a condition for choices.’

5.1 When ignorance fades away and ceases with nothing left over, then any twists, ducks, and dodges are given up: ‘What are old age and death, and who do they belong to?’ or ‘old age and death are one thing, who they belong to is another’, or ‘the soul and the body are the same thing’, or ‘the soul and the body are different things.’ These are all cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated, and unable to arise in the future.

6.1 When ignorance fades away and ceases with nothing left over, then any twists, ducks, and dodges are given up: ‘What is rebirth, and who does it belong to?’ or ‘rebirth is one thing, who it belongs to is another’, or ‘the soul and the body are the same thing’, or ‘the soul and the body are different things.’ These are all cut off at the

root, made like a palm stump, obliterated, and unable to arise in the future.

When ignorance fades away and ceases with nothing left over, 7.1  
then any twists, ducks, and dodges are given up: ‘What is continued existence ...’ ‘What is grasping ...’ ‘What is craving ...’ ‘What is feeling ...’ ‘What is contact ...’ ‘What are the six sense fields ...’ ‘What are name and form ...’ ‘What is consciousness ...’

When ignorance fades away and ceases with nothing left over, 8.1  
then any twists, ducks, and dodges are given up: ‘What are choices, and who do they belong to?’ or ‘choices are one thing, who they belong to is another,’ or ‘the soul and the body are the same thing,’ or ‘the soul and the body are different things.’ These are all cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated, and unable to arise in the future.”

SN 12.36

## Ignorance is a Condition (2nd)

*Dutiyaavijjāpaccayasutta*

At Sāvattthī. 1.1

“Ignorance is a condition for choices. 1.2

Choices are a condition for consciousness. ... That is how this 1.3  
entire mass of suffering originates.

Mendicants, you might say, ‘What are old age and death, and 2.1  
who do they belong to?’ Or you might say, ‘Old age and death are one thing, who they belong to is another.’ But both of these mean the same thing, only the phrasing differs. If you have the view that the soul and the body are the same thing, there is no living of the spiritual life. If you have the view that the soul and the body are different things, there is no living of the spiritual life. Avoiding these two extremes, the Realized One teaches by the middle way: ‘Rebirth is a condition for old age and death.’

‘What is rebirth ...’ ‘What is continued existence ...’ ‘What 3.1  
is grasping ...’ ‘What is craving ...’ ‘What is feeling ...’ ‘What

is contact ...’ ‘What are the six sense fields ...’ ‘What are name and form ...’ ‘What is consciousness ...’ You might say, ‘What are choices, and who do they belong to?’ Or you might say, ‘Choices are one thing, who they belong to is another.’ But both of these mean the same thing, only the phrasing differs. If you have the view that the soul and the body are identical, there is no living of the spiritual life. If you have the view that the soul and the body are different things, there is no living of the spiritual life. Avoiding these two extremes, the Realized One teaches by the middle way: ‘Ignorance is a condition for choices.’

- 4.1 When ignorance fades away and ceases with nothing left over, then any twists, ducks, and dodges are given up: ‘What are old age and death, and who do they belong to?’ or ‘old age and death are one thing, who they belong to is another’, or ‘the soul and the body are identical’, or ‘the soul and the body are different things’. These are all cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated, and unable to arise in the future.
- 5.1 When ignorance fades away and ceases with nothing left over, then any twists, ducks, and dodges are given up: ‘What is rebirth ...’ ‘What is continued existence ...’ ‘What is grasping ...’ ‘What is craving ...’ ‘What is feeling ...’ ‘What is contact ...’ ‘What are the six sense fields ...’ ‘What are name and form ...’ ‘What is consciousness ...’ ‘What are choices, and who do they belong to?’ or ‘choices are one thing, who they belong to is another’, or ‘the soul and the body are identical’, or ‘the soul and the body are different things’. These are all cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated, and unable to arise in the future.”

SN 12.37

## Not Yours

*Natumhasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.

“Mendicants, this body doesn’t belong to you or to anyone else. 1.2  
It’s old deeds, and should be seen as produced by choices and intentions, as something to be felt.

A learned noble disciple carefully and rationally applies the mind 2.1  
to dependent origination itself: ‘When this exists, that is; due to the arising of this, that arises. When this doesn’t exist, that is not; due to the cessation of this, that ceases. That is: Ignorance is a condition for choices.

Choices are a condition for consciousness. ... That is how this 2.5  
entire mass of suffering originates. When ignorance fades away and ceases with nothing left over, choices cease. When choices cease, consciousness ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.’”

SN 12.38

## Intention

*Cetanāsutta*

At Sāvatthī. 1.1

“Mendicants, what you intend or plan, and what you have un- 1.2  
derlying tendencies for become a support for the continuation of consciousness. When this support exists, consciousness becomes established. When consciousness is established and grows, there is rebirth into a new state of existence in the future. When there is rebirth into a new state of existence in the future, future rebirth, old age, and death come to be, as do sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress. That is how this entire mass of suffering originates.

If you don’t intend or plan, but still have underlying tendencies, 2.1  
this becomes a support for the continuation of consciousness. When this support exists, consciousness becomes established. When consciousness is established and grows, there is rebirth into a new state of existence in the future. When there is rebirth into a new state of existence in the future, future rebirth, old age, and

death come to be, as do sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress. That is how this entire mass of suffering originates.

- 3.1 If you don't intend or plan or have underlying tendencies, this doesn't become a support for the continuation of consciousness. With no support, consciousness is not established. When consciousness is not established and doesn't grow, there's no rebirth into a new state of existence in the future. When there is no rebirth into a new state of existence in the future, future rebirth, old age, and death cease, as do sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress. That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases."

SN 12.39

## Intention (2nd)

*Dutiyacetanāsutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.

- 1.2 "Mendicants, what you intend or plan, and what you have underlying tendencies for become a support for the continuation of consciousness. When this support exists, consciousness becomes established. When consciousness is established, name and form are conceived. Name and form are conditions for the six sense fields. The six sense fields are conditions for contact. Contact is a condition for feeling. ... craving ... grasping ... continued existence ... rebirth ... old age and death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress come to be. That is how this entire mass of suffering originates.

- 2.1 If you don't intend or plan, but still have underlying tendencies, this becomes a support for the continuation of consciousness. When this support exists, consciousness becomes established. When consciousness is established, name and form are conceived. Name and form are conditions for the six sense fields. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates.

- 3.1 If you don't intend or plan or have underlying tendencies, this doesn't become a support for the continuation of consciousness.



With no support, consciousness is not established. When consciousness is not established and doesn't grow, name and form are not conceived. When name and form cease, the six sense fields cease. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases."

SN 12.40

## Intention (3rd)

*Tatīyacetanāsutta*

At Sāvattṭhi.

1.1

"Mendicants, what you intend or plan, and what you have underlying tendencies for become a support for the continuation of consciousness. When this support exists, consciousness becomes established. When consciousness is established and grows, there is an inclination. When there is an inclination, there is coming and going. When there is coming and going, there is passing away and reappearing. When there is passing away and reappearing, future rebirth, old age, and death come to be, as do sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress. That is how this entire mass of suffering originates.

1.2

If you don't intend or plan, but still have underlying tendencies, this becomes a support for the continuation of consciousness. When this support exists, consciousness becomes established. When consciousness is established and grows, there is an inclination. When there is an inclination, there is coming and going. When there is coming and going, there is passing away and reappearing. When there is passing away and reappearing, future rebirth, old age, and death come to be, as do sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress. That is how this entire mass of suffering originates.

2.1

If you don't intend or plan or have underlying tendencies, this doesn't become a support for the continuation of consciousness. With no support, consciousness is not established. When consciousness is not established and doesn't grow, there's no inclina-

3.1

tion. When there's no inclination, there's no coming and going. When there's no coming and going, there's no passing away and reappearing. When there's no passing away and reappearing, future rebirth, old age, and death cease, as do sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress. That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases."

# The Chapter on Householders

SN 12.41

## Dangers and Threats

*Pañcaverabhaya sutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

Then the householder Anāthapiṇḍika went up to the Buddha, bowed, and sat down to one side. Seated to one side, the Buddha said to the householder Anāthapiṇḍika:

1.2

“Householder, when a noble disciple has quelled five dangers and threats, has the four factors of stream-entry, and has clearly seen and comprehended the noble system with wisdom, they may, if they wish, declare of themselves: ‘I’ve finished with rebirth in hell, the animal realm, and the ghost realm. I’ve finished with all places of loss, bad places, the underworld. I am a stream-enterer! I’m not liable to be reborn in the underworld, and am bound for awakening.’

2.1

What are the five dangers and threats they have quelled? Anyone who kills living creatures creates dangers and threats both in this life and in lives to come, and experiences mental pain and sadness. That danger and threat is quelled for anyone who refrains from killing living creatures.

3.1

Anyone who steals creates dangers and threats both in this life and in lives to come, and experiences mental pain and sadness.

4.1

That danger and threat is quelled for anyone who refrains from stealing.

- 5.1 Anyone who commits sexual misconduct creates dangers and threats both in this life and in lives to come, and experiences mental pain and sadness. That danger and threat is quelled for anyone who refrains from committing sexual misconduct.
- 6.1 Anyone who lies creates dangers and threats both in this life and in lives to come, and experiences mental pain and sadness. That danger and threat is quelled for anyone who refrains from lying.
- 7.1 Anyone who consumes beer, wine, and liquor intoxicants creates dangers and threats both in this life and in lives to come, and experiences mental pain and sadness. That danger and threat is quelled for anyone who refrains from consuming beer, wine, and liquor intoxicants. These are the five dangers and threats they have quelled.
- 8.1 What are the four factors of stream-entry that they have? It's when a noble disciple has experiential confidence in the Buddha: 'That Blessed One is perfected, a fully awakened Buddha, accomplished in knowledge and conduct, holy, knower of the world, supreme guide for those who wish to train, teacher of gods and humans, awakened, blessed.'
- 9.1 They have experiential confidence in the teaching: 'The teaching is well explained by the Buddha—apparent in the present life, immediately effective, inviting inspection, relevant, so that sensible people can know it for themselves.'
- 10.1 They have experiential confidence in the Saṅgha: 'The Saṅgha of the Buddha's disciples is practicing the way that's good, sincere, systematic, and proper. It consists of the four pairs, the eight individuals. This is the Saṅgha of the Buddha's disciples that is worthy of offerings dedicated to the gods, worthy of hospitality, worthy of a religious donation, worthy of greeting with joined palms, and is the supreme field of merit for the world.'
- 11.1 And a noble disciple's ethical conduct is loved by the noble ones, unbroken, impeccable, spotless, and unmarred, liberating, praised

by sensible people, not mistaken, and leading to immersion. These are the four factors of stream-entry that they have.

And what is the noble system that they have clearly seen and comprehended with wisdom? A noble disciple carefully and rationally applies the mind to dependent origination itself: ‘When this exists, that is; when this doesn’t exist, that is not. Due to the arising of this, that arises; due to the cessation of this, that ceases. Ignorance is a condition for choices. 12.1

Choices are a condition for consciousness. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates. When ignorance fades away and ceases with nothing left over, choices cease. When choices cease, consciousness ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.’ This is the noble system that they have clearly seen and comprehended with wisdom. 12.6

When a noble disciple has quelled five dangers and threats, has the four factors of stream-entry, and has clearly seen and comprehended the noble system with wisdom, they may, if they wish, declare of themselves: ‘I’ve finished with rebirth in hell, the animal realm, and the ghost realm. I’ve finished with all places of loss, bad places, the underworld. I am a stream-enterer! I’m not liable to be reborn in the underworld, and am bound for awakening.’” 13.1

SN 12.42

## Dangers and Threats (2nd)

*Dutiyapañcaverabhaya sutta*

At Sāvatthī. 1.1

“Mendicants, when a noble disciple has quelled five dangers and threats, has the four factors of stream-entry, and has clearly seen and comprehended the noble system with wisdom, they may, if they wish, declare of themselves: ‘I’ve finished with rebirth in hell, the animal realm, and the ghost realm. I’ve finished with all places of loss, bad places, the underworld. I am a stream-enterer! 1.2

I'm not liable to be reborn in the underworld, and am bound for awakening.'

- 2.1 What are the five dangers and threats they have quelled? Killing living creatures ... stealing ... sexual misconduct ... lying ... consuming beer, wine, and liquor intoxicants ... These are the five dangers and threats they have quelled.
- 3.1 What are the four factors of stream-entry that they have? It's when a noble disciple has experiential confidence in the Buddha ... the teaching ... the Saṅgha ... and their ethical conduct is loved by the noble ones. These are the four factors of stream-entry that they have.
- 4.1 And what is the noble system that they have clearly seen and comprehended with wisdom? A noble disciple carefully and rationally applies the mind to dependent origination itself ... This is the noble system that they have clearly seen and comprehended with wisdom.
- 5.1 When a noble disciple has quelled five dangers and threats, has the four factors of stream-entry, and has clearly seen and comprehended the noble system with wisdom, they may, if they wish, declare of themselves: 'I've finished with rebirth in hell, the animal realm, and the ghost realm. I've finished with all places of loss, bad places, the underworld. I am a stream-enterer! I'm not liable to be reborn in the underworld, and am bound for awakening.'

SN 12.43

## Suffering

*Dukkhasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattthī.
- 1.2 "Mendicants, I will teach you the origin and ending of suffering. Listen and apply your mind well, I will speak."
- 1.4 "Yes, sir," they replied. The Buddha said this:
- 2.1 "And what, mendicants, is the origin of suffering? Eye consciousness arises dependent on the eye and sights. The meeting of the

three is contact. Contact is a condition for feeling. Feeling is a condition for craving. This is the origin of suffering.

Ear consciousness arises dependent on the ear and sounds. ... 3.1  
 Nose consciousness arises dependent on the nose and smells. ...  
 Tongue consciousness arises dependent on the tongue and tastes.  
 ... Body consciousness arises dependent on the body and touches.  
 ... Mind consciousness arises dependent on the mind and ideas.  
 The meeting of the three is contact. Contact is a condition for feeling. Feeling is a condition for craving. This is the origin of suffering.

And what is the ending of suffering? Eye consciousness arises 4.1  
 dependent on the eye and sights. The meeting of the three is contact. Contact is a condition for feeling. Feeling is a condition for craving. When that craving fades away and ceases with nothing left over, grasping ceases. When grasping ceases, continued existence ceases. When continued existence ceases, rebirth ceases. When rebirth ceases, old age and death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress cease. That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases. This is the ending of suffering.

Ear consciousness arises dependent on the ear and sounds. ... 5.1  
 Nose consciousness arises dependent on the nose and smells. ...  
 Tongue consciousness arises dependent on the tongue and tastes.  
 ... Body consciousness arises dependent on the body and touches.  
 ... Mind consciousness arises dependent on the mind and ideas.  
 The meeting of the three is contact. Contact is a condition for feeling. Feeling is a condition for craving. When that craving fades away and ceases with nothing left over, grasping ceases. When grasping ceases, continued existence ceases. When continued existence ceases, rebirth ceases. When rebirth ceases, old age and death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress cease. That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases. This is the ending of suffering.”

SN 12.44

## The World

*Lokasutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

1.2 “Mendicants, I will teach you the origin and ending of the world. Listen and apply your mind well, I will speak.”

1.4 “Yes, sir,” they replied. The Buddha said this:

2.1 “And what, mendicants, is the origin of the world? Eye consciousness arises dependent on the eye and sights. The meeting of the three is contact. Contact is a condition for feeling. Feeling is a condition for craving. Craving is a condition for grasping. Grasping is a condition for continued existence. Continued existence is a condition for rebirth. Rebirth is a condition for old age and death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress to come to be. This is the origin of the world.

3.1 Ear consciousness arises dependent on the ear and sounds. ...  
Nose consciousness arises dependent on the nose and smells. ...  
Tongue consciousness arises dependent on the tongue and tastes.  
... Body consciousness arises dependent on the body and touches.  
... Mind consciousness arises dependent on the mind and ideas.  
The meeting of the three is contact. Contact is a condition for feeling. ... Rebirth is a condition for old age and death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress to come to be. This is the origin of the world.

4.1 And what is the ending of the world? Eye consciousness arises dependent on the eye and sights. The meeting of the three is contact. Contact is a condition for feeling. Feeling is a condition for craving. When that craving fades away and ceases with nothing left over, grasping ceases. When grasping ceases, continued existence ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases. This is the ending of the world.

5.1 Ear consciousness arises dependent on the ear and sounds. ...  
Nose consciousness arises dependent on the nose and smells. ...



Tongue consciousness arises dependent on the tongue and tastes.  
 ... Body consciousness arises dependent on the body and touches.  
 ... Mind consciousness arises dependent on the mind and ideas.  
 The meeting of the three is contact. Contact is a condition for feeling. Feeling is a condition for craving. When that craving fades away and ceases with nothing left over, grasping ceases. When grasping ceases, continued existence ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases. This is the ending of the world.”

SN 12.45

## At Ñātika

*Ñātikasutta*

SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying at Ñātika 1.1  
 in the brick house. Then while the Buddha was in private retreat  
 he spoke this exposition of the teaching:

“Eye consciousness arises dependent on the eye and sights. The 2.1  
 meeting of the three is contact. Contact is a condition for feel-  
 ing. Feeling is a condition for craving. Craving is a condition for  
 grasping. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates.

Ear consciousness arises dependent on the ear and sounds. ... 3.1  
 Nose consciousness arises dependent on the nose and smells. ...  
 Tongue consciousness arises dependent on the tongue and tastes.  
 ... Body consciousness arises dependent on the body and touches.  
 ... Mind consciousness arises dependent on the mind and ideas.  
 The meeting of the three is contact. Contact is a condition for  
 feeling. Feeling is a condition for craving. Craving is a condition  
 for grasping. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates.

Eye consciousness arises dependent on the eye and sights. The 4.1  
 meeting of the three is contact. Contact is a condition for feeling.  
 Feeling is a condition for craving. When that craving fades away  
 and ceases with nothing left over, grasping ceases. When grasping  
 ceases, continued existence ceases. ... That is how this entire mass  
 of suffering ceases.

- 5.1 Ear consciousness arises dependent on the ear and sounds. ... Mind consciousness arises dependent on the mind and ideas. The meeting of the three is contact. Contact is a condition for feeling. Feeling is a condition for craving. When that craving fades away and ceases with nothing left over, grasping ceases. When grasping ceases, continued existence ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.”
- 6.1 Now at that time a certain monk was standing listening in on the Buddha. The Buddha saw him and said, “Monk, did you hear that exposition of the teaching?”
- 6.5 “Yes, sir.”
- 6.6 “Learn that exposition of the teaching, memorize it, and remember it. That exposition of the teaching is beneficial and relates to the fundamentals of the spiritual life.”

SN 12.46

## A Certain Brahmin

*Aññatarabrāhmaṇasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattthī.
- 1.2 Then a certain brahmin went up to the Buddha, and exchanged greetings with him. When the greetings and polite conversation were over, he sat down to one side and said to the Buddha:
- 2.1 “Mister Gotama, does the person who does the deed experience the result?”
- 2.2 “‘The person who does the deed experiences the result’: this is one extreme, brahmin.”
- 3.1 “Then does one person do the deed and another experience the result?”
- 3.2 “‘One person does the deed and another experiences the result’: this is the second extreme.
- 3.3 Avoiding these two extremes, the Realized One teaches by the middle way: ‘Ignorance is a condition for choices.

Choices are a condition for consciousness. ... That is how this 3.5  
entire mass of suffering originates. When ignorance fades away  
and ceases with nothing left over, choices cease. When choices  
cease ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.”

When he said this, the brahmin said to the Buddha, “Excellent, 4.1  
Mister Gotama! Excellent! ... From this day forth, may Mister  
Gotama remember me as a lay follower who has gone for refuge  
for life.”

SN 12.47

## Jānussoni

*Jānussonisutta*

At Sāvattḥī. 1.1

Then the brahmin Jānussoni went up to the Buddha, and ex- 1.2  
changed greetings with him. Seated to one side he said to the  
Buddha:

“Mister Gotama, does all exist?” 2.1

“‘All exists’: this is one extreme, brahmin.” 2.2

“Then does all not exist?” 3.1

“‘All does not exist’: this is the second extreme. 3.2

Avoiding these two extremes, the Realized One teaches by the 3.3  
middle way: ‘Ignorance is a condition for choices.

Choices are a condition for consciousness. ... That is how this 3.5  
entire mass of suffering originates. When ignorance fades away and  
ceases with nothing left over, choices cease. When choices cease,  
consciousness ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering  
ceases.’”

When he said this, the brahmin Jānussoni said to the Buddha, 4.1  
“Excellent, Mister Gotama! Excellent! ... From this day forth, may  
Mister Gotama remember me as a lay follower who has gone for  
refuge for life.”

SN 12.48

## A Cosmologist

*Lokāyatikasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 Then a brahmin cosmologist went up to the Buddha ... Seated to one side he said to the Buddha:
- 2.1 “Mister Gotama, does all exist?”
- 2.2 “‘All exists’: this is the oldest cosmology, brahmin.”
- 3.1 “Then does all not exist?”
- 3.2 “‘All does not exist’: this is the second cosmology.
- 4.1 “Well, is all a unity?”
- 4.2 “‘All is a unity’: this is the third cosmology.
- 5.1 “Then is all a plurality?”
- 5.2 “‘All is a plurality’: this is the fourth cosmology.
- 6.1 Avoiding these two extremes, the Realized One teaches by the middle way: ‘Ignorance is a condition for choices.
- 6.3 Choices are a condition for consciousness. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates. When ignorance fades away and ceases with nothing left over, choices cease. When choices cease, consciousness ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.’”
- 7.1 When he said this, the brahmin cosmologist said to the Buddha, “Excellent, Mister Gotama! Excellent! ... From this day forth, may Mister Gotama remember me as a lay follower who has gone for refuge for life.”

SN 12.49

## A Noble Disciple

*Ariyasāvakasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.

“Mendicants, a learned noble disciple doesn’t think: ‘When 1.2  
what exists, what is? Due to the arising of what, what arises? When  
what exists do name and form come to be? When what exists do  
the six sense fields ... contact ... feeling ... craving ... grasping ...  
continued existence ... rebirth ... old age and death come to be?’

Rather, a learned noble disciple has only knowledge about this 2.1  
that is independent of others: ‘When this exists, that is; due to the  
arising of this, that arises. When ignorance exists choices come  
to be. When choices exist consciousness comes to be. When con-  
sciousness exists name and form come to be. When name and  
form exist the six sense fields come to be. When the six sense fields  
exist contact comes to be. When contact exists feeling comes to  
be. When feeling exists craving comes to be. When craving exists  
grasping comes to be. When grasping exists continued existence  
comes to be. When continued existence exists rebirth comes to  
be. When rebirth exists old age and death come to be.’ They un-  
derstand: ‘This is the origin of the world.’

A learned noble disciple doesn’t think: ‘When what doesn’t 3.1  
exist, what is not? Due to the cessation of what, what ceases? When  
what doesn’t exist do choices not come to be? When what doesn’t  
exist do name and form not come to be? When what doesn’t exist  
do the six sense fields ... contact ... feeling ... craving ... grasping  
... continued existence ... rebirth ... old age and death not come  
to be?’

Rather, a learned noble disciple has only knowledge about this 4.1  
that is independent of others: ‘When this doesn’t exist, that is  
not; due to the cessation of this, that ceases. When ignorance  
doesn’t exist choices don’t come to be. When choices don’t exist  
consciousness doesn’t come to be. When consciousness doesn’t  
exist name and form don’t come to be. When name and form don’t  
exist the six sense fields don’t come to be. ... continued existence  
doesn’t come to be ... rebirth doesn’t come to be ... When rebirth  
doesn’t exist old age and death don’t come to be.’ They understand:  
‘This is the cessation of the world.’

- 5.1 A noble disciple comes to understand the world, its origin, its cessation, and the practice that leads to its cessation. Such a noble disciple is one who is called ‘one accomplished in view’, ‘one accomplished in vision’, ‘one who has come to the true teaching’, ‘one who sees this true teaching’, ‘one endowed with a trainee’s knowledge’, ‘one who has entered the stream of the teaching’, ‘a noble one with penetrative wisdom’, and also ‘one who stands knocking at the door to freedom from death.’”

SN 12.50

## A Noble Disciple (2nd)

*Dutiyaariyasāvakasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattthī.
- 1.2 “Mendicants, a learned noble disciple doesn’t think: ‘When what exists, what is? Due to the arising of what, what arises? When what exists do choices come to be? When what exists does consciousness come to be? When what exists do name and form ... the six sense fields ... contact ... feeling ... craving ... grasping ... continued existence ... rebirth ... old age and death come to be?’
- 2.1 Rather, a learned noble disciple has only knowledge about this that is independent of others: ‘When this exists, that is; due to the arising of this, that arises. When ignorance exists, choices come to be. When choices exist consciousness comes to be. When consciousness exists name and form come to be. When name and form exist the six sense fields come to be. When the six sense fields exist contact comes to be. When contact exists feeling comes to be. When feeling exists craving comes to be. When craving exists grasping comes to be. When grasping exists continued existence comes to be. When continued existence exists rebirth comes to be. When rebirth exists old age and death come to be.’ They understand: ‘This is the origin of the world.’
- 3.1 A learned noble disciple doesn’t think: ‘When what doesn’t exist, what is not? Due to the cessation of what, what ceases? When

what doesn't exist do choices not come to be? When what doesn't exist does consciousness not come to be? When what doesn't exist do name and form ... the six sense fields ... contact ... feeling ... craving ... grasping ... continued existence ... rebirth ... old age and death not come to be?'

Rather, a learned noble disciple has only knowledge about this 4.1 that is independent of others: 'When this doesn't exist, that is not; due to the cessation of this, that ceases. That is: When ignorance doesn't exist, choices don't come to be. When choices don't exist consciousness doesn't come to be. When consciousness doesn't exist name and form don't come to be. When name and form don't exist the six sense fields don't come to be. ... When rebirth doesn't exist old age and death don't come to be.' They understand: 'This is the cessation of the world.'

A noble disciple comes to understand the world, its origin, its 5.1 cessation, and the practice that leads to its cessation. Such a noble disciple is one who is called 'one accomplished in view', 'one accomplished in vision', 'one who has come to the true teaching', 'one who sees this true teaching', 'one endowed with a trainee's knowledge', 'one who has entered the stream of the teaching', 'a noble one with penetrative wisdom', and also 'one who stands pushing open the door to freedom from death.'"

# The Chapter on Suffering

SN 12.51

## An Inquiry

*Parivīmaṃsanāsutta*

- 1.1 SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near Sāvattḥī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. There the Buddha addressed the mendicants, "Mendicants!"
- 1.5 "Venerable sir," they replied. The Buddha said this:
- 2.1 "Mendicants, when a mendicant is inquiring, how do you define when they are inquiring for the complete ending of suffering?"
- 2.2 "Our teachings are rooted in the Buddha. He is our guide and our refuge. Sir, may the Buddha himself please clarify the meaning of this. The mendicants will listen and remember it."
- 2.3 "Well then, mendicants, listen and apply your mind well, I will speak."
- 2.4 "Yes, sir," they replied. The Buddha said this:
- 3.1 "Mendicants, take a mendicant who makes an inquiry: 'The suffering that arises in the world starting with old age and death takes many and diverse forms. What is the source, origin, birthplace, and inception of this suffering? When what exists do old age and death come to be? When what does not exist do old age and death not come to be?' While making an inquiry they understand: 'The suffering that arises in the world starting with old age and death takes many and diverse forms. The source of this suffering is re-



birth. When rebirth exists, old age and death come to be. When rebirth doesn't exist, old age and death don't come to be.'

They understand old age and death, their origin, their cessation, 4.1  
and the fitting practice for their cessation. And they practice in line with that path. This is called a mendicant who is practicing for the complete ending of suffering, for the cessation of old age and death.

Then they inquire further: 'But what is the source of this re- 5.1  
birth? When what exists does rebirth come to be? And when what does not exist does rebirth not come to be?' While making an inquiry they understand: 'Continued existence is the source of rebirth. When continued existence exists, rebirth comes to be. When continued existence does not exist, rebirth doesn't come to be.'

They understand rebirth, its origin, its cessation, and the fitting 6.1  
practice for its cessation. And they practice in line with that path. This is called a mendicant who is practicing for the complete ending of suffering, for the cessation of rebirth.

Then they inquire further: 'But what is the source of this con- 7.1  
tinued existence? ...' ... 'But what is the source of this grasping? ...' ... 'But what is the source of this craving? ...' ... 'But what is the source of this feeling? ...' ... 'But what is the source of this contact? ...' ... 'But what is the source of these six sense fields? ...' ... 'But what is the source of this name and form? ...' ... 'But what is the source of this consciousness? ...' ... 'But what is the source of these choices? When what exists do choices come to be? When what does not exist do choices not come to be?' While making an inquiry they understand: 'Ignorance is the source of choices. When ignorance exists, choices come to be. When ignorance does not exist, choices don't come to be.'

They understand choices, their origin, their cessation, and the 8.1  
fitting practice for their cessation. And they practice in line with that path. This is called a mendicant who is practicing for the complete ending of suffering, for the cessation of choices.

- 9.1 If an ignorant individual makes a good choice, their consciousness enters a good realm. If they make a bad choice, their consciousness enters a bad realm. If they make an imperturbable choice, their consciousness enters an imperturbable realm. When a mendicant has given up ignorance and given rise to knowledge, they don't make a good choice, a bad choice, or an imperturbable choice. Not choosing or intending, they don't grasp at anything in the world. Not grasping, they're not anxious. Not being anxious, they personally become extinguished.
- 9.7 They understand: 'Rebirth is ended, the spiritual journey has been completed, what had to be done has been done, there is nothing further for this place.'
- 10.1 If they feel a pleasant feeling, they understand that it's impermanent, that they're not attached to it, and that they don't take pleasure in it. If they feel a painful feeling, they understand that it's impermanent, that they're not attached to it, and that they don't take pleasure in it. If they feel a neutral feeling, they understand that it's impermanent, that they're not attached to it, and that they don't take pleasure in it. If they feel a pleasant feeling, they feel it detached. If they feel a painful feeling, they feel it detached. If they feel a neutral feeling, they feel it detached.
- 11.1 Feeling the end of the body approaching, they understand: 'I feel the end of the body approaching.' Feeling the end of life approaching, they understand: 'I feel the end of life approaching.' They understand: 'When my body breaks up and my life has come to an end, everything that's felt, since I no longer take pleasure in it, will become cool right here. Only bodily remains will be left.'
- 12.1 Suppose a person were to remove a hot clay pot from a potter's kiln and place it down on level ground. Its heat would dissipate right there, and the shards would be left behind.
- 12.3 In the same way, feeling the end of the body approaching, they understand: 'I feel the end of the body approaching.' Feeling the end of life approaching, they understand: 'I feel the end of life approaching.' They understand: 'When my body breaks up and

my life has come to an end, everything that's felt, since I no longer take pleasure in it, will become cool right here. Only bodily remains will be left.'

What do you think, mendicants? Would a mendicant who has ended the defilements still make good choices, bad choices, or imperturbable choices?" 13.1

"No, sir." 13.3

"And when there are no choices at all, with the cessation of choices, would consciousness still be found?" 14.1

"No, sir." 14.2

"And when there's no consciousness at all, would name and form still be found?" 15.1

"No, sir." 15.2

"And when there are no name and form at all, would the six sense fields still be found?" 16.1

"No, sir." 16.2

"And when there are no six sense fields at all, would contact still be found?" 17.1

"No, sir." 17.2

"And when there's no contact at all, would feeling still be found?" 18.1

"No, sir." 18.2

"And when there's no feeling at all, would craving still be found?" 19.1

"No, sir." 19.2

"And when there's no craving at all, would grasping still be found?" 20.1

"No, sir." 20.2

"And when there's no grasping at all, would continued existence still be found?" 21.1

"No, sir." 21.2

"And when there's no continued existence at all, would rebirth still be found?" 22.1

"No, sir." 22.2

"And when there's no rebirth at all, would old age and death still be found?" 23.1

23.2 “No, sir.”

24.1 “Good, good, mendicants! That’s how it is, not otherwise. Trust me on this, mendicants; be convinced. Have no doubts or uncertainties in this matter. Just this is the end of suffering.”

SN 12.52

## Grasping

*Upādānasutta*

1.1 At Sāvattḥī.

1.2 “There are things that fuel grasping. When you concentrate on the gratification provided by these things, your craving grows. Craving is a condition for grasping. Grasping is a condition for continued existence. Continued existence is a condition for rebirth. Rebirth is a condition for old age and death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress to come to be. That is how this entire mass of suffering originates.

2.1 Suppose a great mass of fire was burning with ten, twenty, thirty, or forty loads of wood. And from time to time someone would toss in dry grass, cow dung, or wood. Fed and fuelled by that, the bonfire would burn for a long time.

2.4 In the same way, there are things that fuel grasping. When you concentrate on the gratification provided by these things, your craving grows. Craving is a condition for grasping. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates.

3.1 There are things that fuel grasping. When you concentrate on the drawbacks of these things, your craving ceases. When craving ceases, grasping ceases. When grasping ceases, continued existence ceases. When continued existence ceases, rebirth ceases. When rebirth ceases, old age and death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress cease. That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.

4.1 Suppose a great mass of fire was burning with ten, twenty, thirty, or forty loads of wood. And no-one would toss in dry grass, cow dung, or wood from time to time. As the original fuel is used up

and no more is added, the great mass of fire would be extinguished due to not being fed.

In the same way, there are things that fuel grasping. When you concentrate on the drawbacks of these things, your craving ceases. When craving ceases, grasping ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.” 4.4

SN 12.53

## Fetters

*Saṃyojanasutta*

At Sāvattḥī.

1.1

“There are things that are prone to being fettered. When you concentrate on the gratification provided by these things, your craving grows. Craving is a condition for grasping. Grasping is a condition for continued existence. Continued existence is a condition for rebirth. Rebirth is a condition for old age and death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress to come to be. That is how this entire mass of suffering originates. 1.2

Suppose an oil lamp depended on oil and a wick to burn. And from time to time someone would pour oil in and adjust the wick. Fed and fuelled by that, the oil lamp would burn for a long time. 2.1

In the same way, there are things that are prone to being fettered. When you concentrate on the gratification provided by these things, your craving grows. Craving is a condition for grasping. Grasping is a condition for continued existence. Continued existence is a condition for rebirth. Rebirth is a condition for old age and death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress to come to be. That is how this entire mass of suffering originates. 2.4

There are things that are prone to being fettered. When you concentrate on the drawbacks of these things, your craving ceases. When craving ceases, grasping ceases. When grasping ceases, continued existence ceases. When continued existence ceases, rebirth ceases. When rebirth ceases, old age and death, sorrow, lamen- 3.1

tation, pain, sadness, and distress cease. That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.

- 4.1 Suppose an oil lamp depended on oil and a wick to burn. And no-one would pour oil in and adjust the wick from time to time. As the original fuel is used up and no more is added, the oil lamp would be extinguished due to not being fed.
- 4.4 In the same way, there are things that are prone to being fettered. When you concentrate on the drawbacks of these things, your craving ceases. When craving ceases, grasping ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.”

SN 12.54

## Fetters (2nd)

*Dutiyasamāyojanasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattthī.
- 1.2 “Mendicants, suppose an oil lamp depended on oil and a wick to burn. And from time to time someone would pour oil in and adjust the wick. Fed and fuelled by that, the oil lamp would burn for a long time.
- 1.5 In the same way, there are things that are prone to being fettered. When you concentrate on the gratification provided by these things, your craving grows. Craving is a condition for grasping. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates.
- 2.1 Suppose an oil lamp depended on oil and a wick to burn. And no-one would pour oil in and adjust the wick from time to time. As the original fuel is used up and no more is added, the oil lamp would be extinguished due to not being fed.
- 2.4 In the same way, there are things that are prone to being fettered. When you concentrate on the drawbacks of these things, your craving ceases. When craving ceases, grasping ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.”

SN 12.55

## A Great Tree

*Mahārukkhasutta*

At Sāvattḥī.

1.1

“There are things that fuel grasping. When you concentrate 1.2  
on the gratification provided by these things, your craving grows.  
Craving is a condition for grasping. Grasping is a condition for  
continued existence. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering  
originates.

Suppose there was a great tree. And its roots going downwards 2.1  
and across all draw the sap upwards. Fed and fuelled by that, the  
great tree would stand for a long time.

In the same way, there are things that fuel grasping. When you 2.4  
concentrate on the gratification provided by these things, your  
craving grows. Craving is a condition for grasping. ... That is how  
this entire mass of suffering originates.

There are things that fuel grasping. When you concentrate on 3.1  
the drawbacks of these things, your craving ceases. When craving  
ceases, grasping ceases. When grasping ceases, continued existence  
ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.

Suppose there was a great tree. Then a person comes along with 4.1  
a spade and basket. They’d cut the tree down at the roots, dig it up,  
and pull the roots out, down to the fibers and stems. They’d cut the  
tree apart, cut up the parts, and chop it into splinters. They’d dry  
the splinters in the wind and sun, burn them with fire, and reduce  
them to ashes. Then they’d winnow the ashes in a strong wind, or  
float them away down a swift stream. In this way the great tree is  
cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated, and unable  
to arise in the future.

In the same way, there are things that fuel grasping. When you 4.7  
concentrate on the drawbacks of these things, your craving ceases.  
When craving ceases, grasping ceases. When grasping ceases, con-

tinued existence ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.”

SN 12.56

## A Great Tree (2nd)

*Dutiya mahārukkaḥasutta*

1.1 At Sāvattḥi.

1.2 “Mendicants, suppose there was a great tree. And its roots going downwards and across all draw the sap upwards. Fed and fuelled by that, the great tree would stand for a long time.

1.5 In the same way, there are things that fuel grasping. When you concentrate on the gratification provided by these things, your craving grows. Craving is a condition for grasping. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates.

2.1 Suppose there was a great tree. Then a person comes along with a spade and basket. They’d cut the tree down at the roots, dig them up, and pull them out, down to the fibers and stems. They’d cut the tree apart, cut up the parts, and chop it into splinters. They’d dry the splinters in the wind and sun, burn them with fire, and reduce them to ashes. Then they’d winnow the ashes in a strong wind, or float them away down a swift stream. In this way the great tree is cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated, and unable to arise in the future.

2.6 In the same way, there are things that fuel grasping. When you concentrate on the drawbacks of these things, your craving ceases. When craving ceases, grasping ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.”



SN 12.57

## A Sapling

*Taruṇarukkkhasutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

“There are things that are prone to being fettered. When you concentrate on the gratification provided by these things, your craving grows. Craving is a condition for grasping. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates. 1.2

Suppose there was a sapling. And from time to time someone would clear around the roots, supply soil, and water it. Fed and fuelled by that, the sapling would grow, increase, and mature. 2.1

In the same way, there are things that are prone to being fettered. When you concentrate on the gratification provided by these things, your craving grows. Craving is a condition for grasping. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates. 2.4

There are things that are prone to being fettered. When you concentrate on the drawbacks of these things, your craving ceases. When craving ceases, grasping ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases. 3.1

Suppose there was a sapling. Then a person comes along with a spade and basket. ... They’d cut the sapling apart, cut up the parts, and chop it into splinters. They’d dry the splinters in the wind and sun, burn them with fire, and reduce them to ashes. Then they’d winnow the ashes in a strong wind, or float them away down a swift stream. In this way the sapling is cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated, and unable to arise in the future. 4.1

In the same way, there are things that are prone to being fettered. When you concentrate on the drawbacks of these things, your craving ceases. When craving ceases, grasping ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.” 4.5

SN 12.58

## Name and Form

*Nāmarūpasutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

1.2 “There are things that are prone to being fettered. When you concentrate on the gratification provided by these things, name and form are conceived. Name and form are conditions for the six sense fields. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates.

2.1 Suppose there was a great tree. And its roots going downwards and across all draw the sap upwards. Fed and fuelled by that, the great tree would stand for a long time.

2.4 In the same way, there are things that are prone to being fettered. When you concentrate on the gratification provided by these things, name and form are conceived. ...

3.1 There are things that are prone to being fettered. When you concentrate on the drawbacks of these things, name and form are not conceived. When name and form cease, the six sense fields cease. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.

4.1 Suppose there was a great tree. Then a person comes along with a spade and basket. ... In this way the great tree is cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated, and unable to arise in the future.

4.4 In the same way, there are things that are prone to being fettered. When you concentrate on the drawbacks of these things, name and form are not conceived. When name and form cease, the six sense fields cease. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.”

SN 12.59

## Consciousness

*Viññāṇasutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

“There are things that are prone to being fettered. When you concentrate on the gratification provided by these things, consciousness is conceived. 1.2

Consciousness is a condition for name and form. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates. 1.3

Suppose there was a great tree. And its roots going downwards and across all draw the sap upwards. ... 2.1

In the same way, there are things that are prone to being fettered. When you concentrate on the gratification provided by these things, consciousness is conceived. ... 2.3

There are things that are prone to being fettered. When you concentrate on the drawbacks of these things, consciousness is not conceived. When consciousness ceases, name and form cease. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases. 3.1

Suppose there was a great tree. Then a person comes along with a spade and basket. ... In this way the great tree is cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated, and unable to arise in the future. 4.1

In the same way, there are things that are prone to being fettered. When you concentrate on the drawbacks of these things, consciousness is not conceived. When consciousness ceases, name and form cease. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.” 4.4

SN 12.60

## Sources

*Nidānasutta*

At one time the Buddha was staying in the land of the Kurus, near the Kuru town named Kammāsadamma. Then Venerable Ānanda went up to the Buddha, bowed, sat down to one side, and said to the Buddha: 1.1

“It’s incredible, sir! It’s amazing, in that this dependent origination is deep and appears deep, yet to me it seems as plain as can be.” 1.3

- 2.1 “Not so, Ānanda! Not so, Ānanda! This dependent origination is deep and appears deep. It is because of not understanding and not penetrating this teaching that this population has become tangled like string, knotted like a ball of thread, and matted like rushes and reeds, and it doesn’t escape the places of loss, the bad places, the underworld, transmigration.
- 3.1 There are things that fuel grasping. When you concentrate on the gratification provided by these things, your craving grows. Craving is a condition for grasping. Grasping is a condition for continued existence. Continued existence is a condition for rebirth. Rebirth is a condition for old age and death, sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress to come to be. That is how this entire mass of suffering originates.
- 4.1 Suppose there was a great tree. And its roots going downwards and across all draw the sap upwards. Fed and fuelled by that, the great tree would stand for a long time.
- 4.4 In the same way, there are things that fuel grasping. When you concentrate on the gratification provided by these things, your craving grows. Craving is a condition for grasping. Grasping is a condition for continued existence. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates.
- 5.1 There are things that fuel grasping. When you concentrate on the drawbacks of these things, your craving ceases. When craving ceases, grasping ceases. When grasping ceases, continued existence ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.
- 6.1 Suppose there was a great tree. Then a person comes along with a spade and basket. They’d cut the tree down at the roots, dig them up, and pull them out, down to the fibers and stems. Then they’d split the tree apart, cut up the parts, and chop it into splinters. They’d dry the splinters in the wind and sun, burn them with fire, and reduce them to ashes. Then they’d winnow the ashes in a strong wind, or float them away down a swift stream. In this way the great tree is cut off at the root, made like a palm stump, obliterated, and unable to arise in the future.

In the same way, there are things that fuel grasping. When you 6.8  
 concentrate on the drawbacks of these things, your craving ceases.  
 When craving ceases, grasping ceases. When grasping ceases, con-  
 tinued existence ceases. When continued existence ceases, rebirth  
 ceases. When rebirth ceases, old age and death, sorrow, lamen-  
 tation, pain, sadness, and distress cease. That is how this entire  
 mass of suffering ceases.”

# The Great Chapter

SN 12.61

## Unlearned

*Assutavāsutta*

- 1.1 SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near Sāvathī in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. . .
- 1.3 “Mendicants, when it comes to this body made up of the four principal states, an unlearned ordinary person might become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed. Why is that? This body made up of the four principal states is seen to accumulate and disperse, to be taken up and laid to rest. That’s why, when it comes to this body, an unlearned ordinary person might become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed.
- 2.1 But when it comes to that which is called ‘mind’ and also ‘sentience’ and also ‘consciousness’, an unlearned ordinary person is unable to become disillusioned, dispassionate, or freed. Why is that? Because for a long time they’ve been attached to it, thought of it as their own, and mistaken it: ‘This is mine, I am this, this is my self.’ That’s why, when it comes to this mind, an unlearned ordinary person is unable to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed.
- 3.1 But an unlearned ordinary person would be better off taking this body made up of the four principal states to be their self, rather than the mind. Why is that? This body made up of the four principal

states is seen to last for a year, or for two, three, four, five, ten, twenty, thirty, forty, fifty, or a hundred years, or even longer.

But that which is called ‘mind’ and also ‘sentience’ and also 4.1  
 ‘consciousness’ arises as one thing and ceases as another all day and all night. It’s like a monkey moving through the forest. It grabs hold of one branch, lets it go, and grabs another; then it lets that go and grabs yet another. In the same way, that which is called ‘mind’ and also ‘sentience’ and also ‘consciousness’ arises as one thing and ceases as another all day and all night.

In this case, a learned noble disciple carefully and rationally 5.1  
 applies the mind to dependent origination itself: ‘When this exists, that is; due to the arising of this, that arises. When this doesn’t exist, that is not; due to the cessation of this, that ceases. That is: Ignorance is a condition for choices.

Choices are a condition for consciousness. ... That is how this 5.5  
 entire mass of suffering originates. When ignorance fades away and ceases with nothing left over, choices cease. When choices cease, consciousness ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.’

Seeing this, a learned noble disciple grows disillusioned with 6.1  
 form, feeling, perception, choices, and consciousness. Being disillusioned, desire fades away. When desire fades away they’re freed. When they’re freed, they know they’re freed.

They understand: ‘Rebirth is ended, the spiritual journey has 6.3  
 been completed, what had to be done has been done, there is nothing further for this place.’”

SN 12.62

## Unlearned (2nd)

*Dutiyaassutavāsutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

“Mendicants, when it comes to this body made up of the four 1.2  
 principal states, an unlearned ordinary person might become disil-

lusioned, dispassionate, and freed. Why is that? This body made up of the four principal states is seen to accumulate and disperse, to be taken up and laid to rest. That's why, when it comes to this body, an unlearned ordinary person might become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed. But when it comes to that which is called 'mind' and also 'sentience' and also 'consciousness', an unlearned ordinary person is unable to become disillusioned, dispassionate, or freed. Why is that? Because for a long time they've been attached to it, thought of it as their own, and mistaken it: 'This is mine, I am this, this is my self.' That's why, when it comes to this mind, an unlearned ordinary person is unable to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed.

2.1 But an unlearned ordinary person would be better off taking this body made up of the four principal states to be their self, rather than the mind. Why is that? This body made up of the four principal states is seen to last for a year, or for two, three, four, five, ten, twenty, thirty, forty, fifty, or a hundred years, or even longer. But that which is called 'mind' and also 'sentience' and also 'consciousness' arises as one thing and ceases as another all day and all night.

3.1 In this case, a learned noble disciple carefully and rationally applies the mind to dependent origination itself: 'When this exists, that is; due to the arising of this, that arises. When this doesn't exist, that is not; due to the cessation of this, that ceases. That is: Pleasant feeling arises dependent on a contact to be experienced as pleasant. With the cessation of that contact to be experienced as pleasant, the corresponding pleasant feeling ceases and stops. Painful feeling arises dependent on a contact to be experienced as painful. With the cessation of that contact to be experienced as painful, the corresponding painful feeling ceases and stops. Neutral feeling arises dependent on a contact to be experienced as neutral. With the cessation of that contact to be experienced as neutral, the corresponding neutral feeling ceases and stops.



When you rub two sticks together, heat is generated and fire is produced. But when you part the sticks and lay them aside, any corresponding heat ceases and stops. In the same way, pleasant feeling arises dependent on a contact to be experienced as pleasant. With the cessation of that contact to be experienced as pleasant, the corresponding pleasant feeling ceases and stops. Painful feeling ... Neutral feeling arises dependent on a contact to be experienced as neutral. With the cessation of that contact to be experienced as neutral, the corresponding neutral feeling ceases and stops. 4.1

Seeing this, a learned noble disciple grows disillusioned with form, feeling, perception, choices, and consciousness. Being disillusioned, desire fades away. When desire fades away they're freed. When they're freed, they know they're freed. 5.1

They understand: 'Rebirth is ended, the spiritual journey has been completed, what had to be done has been done, there is nothing further for this place.'" 5.3

SN 12.63

## A Child's Flesh

*Puttamamsasutta*

At Sāvattṥi. 1.1

"Mendicants, there are these four fuels. They maintain sentient beings that have been born and help those that are about to be born. What four? Solid food, whether solid or subtle; contact is the second, mental intention the third, and consciousness the fourth. These are the four fuels that maintain sentient beings that have been born and help those that are about to be born. 1.2

And how should you regard solid food? Suppose a couple who were husband and wife set out to cross a desert, taking limited supplies. They had an only child, dear and beloved. As the couple were crossing the desert their limited quantity of supplies would run out, and they'd still have the rest of the desert to cross. Then it would occur to that couple: 'Our limited quantity of supplies 2.1

has run out, and we still have the rest of the desert to cross. Why don't we kill our only child, so dear and beloved, and prepare dried and spiced meat? Then we can make it across the desert by eating our child's flesh. Let not all three perish.' Then that couple would kill their only child, so dear and beloved, and prepare dried and spiced meat. They'd make it across the desert by eating their child's flesh. And as they'd eat their child's flesh, they'd beat their breasts and cry: 'Where are you, our only child? Where are you, our only child?'

3.1 What do you think, mendicants? Would they eat that food for fun, indulgence, adornment, or decoration?"

3.3 "No, sir."

3.4 "Wouldn't they eat that food just so they could make it across the desert?"

3.5 "Yes, sir."

3.6 "I say that this is how you should regard solid food. When solid food is completely understood, desire for the five kinds of sensual stimulation is completely understood. When desire for the five kinds of sensual stimulation is completely understood, a noble disciple is bound by no fetter that might return them again to this world.

4.1 And how should you regard contact as fuel? Suppose there was a flayed cow. If she stands by a wall, the creatures on the wall bite her. If she stands under a tree, the creatures in the tree bite her. If she stands in some water, the creatures in the water bite her. If she stands in the open, the creatures in the open bite her. Wherever that flayed cow stands, the creatures there would bite her. I say that this is how you should regard contact as fuel. When contact as fuel is completely understood, the three feelings are completely understood. When the three feelings are completely understood, a noble disciple has nothing further to do, I say.

5.1 And how should you regard mental intention as fuel? Suppose there was a pit of glowing coals deeper than a man's height, filled with glowing coals that neither flamed nor smoked. Then a person

would come along who wants to live and doesn't want to die, who wants to be happy and recoils from pain. Two strong men would grab them by the arms and drag them towards the pit of glowing coals. Then that person's intention, aim, and wish would be to get far away. Why is that? Because that person would think: 'If I fall in that pit of glowing coals, that will result in my death or deadly pain.' I say that this is how you should regard mental intention as fuel. When mental intention as fuel is completely understood, the three cravings are completely understood. When the three cravings are completely understood, a noble disciple has nothing further to do, I say.

And how should you regard consciousness as fuel? Suppose 6.1  
they were to arrest a bandit, a criminal and present him to the king, saying: 'Your Majesty, this is a bandit, a criminal. Punish him as you will.' The king would say: 'Go, my men, and strike this man in the morning with a hundred spears!' The king's men did as they were told. Then at midday the king would say: 'My men, how is that man?' 'He's still alive, Your Majesty.' The king would say: 'Go, my men, and strike this man in the middle of the day with a hundred spears!' The king's men did as they were told. Then late in the afternoon the king would say: 'My men, how is that man?' 'He's still alive, Your Majesty.' The king would say: 'Go, my men, and strike this man in the late afternoon with a hundred spears!' The king's men did as they were told.

What do you think, mendicants? Would that man experience 6.19  
pain and distress from being struck with three hundred spears a day?"

"Sir, that man would experience pain and distress from being 6.21  
struck with one spear, let alone three hundred spears!"

"I say that this is how you should regard consciousness as fuel. 6.23  
When consciousness as fuel is completely understood, name and form is completely understood. When name and form are completely understood, a noble disciple has nothing further to do, I say."

SN 12.64

## If There Is Desire

*Atthirāgasutta*

1.1 At Sāvattḥī.

1.2 “Mendicants, there are these four fuels. They maintain sentient beings that have been born and help those that are about to be born. What four? Solid food, whether solid or subtle; contact is the second, mental intention the third, and consciousness the fourth. These are the four fuels that maintain sentient beings that have been born and help those that are about to be born.

2.1 If there is desire, relishing, and craving for solid food, consciousness becomes established there and grows. Where consciousness is established and grows, name and form are conceived. Where name and form are conceived, there is the growth of choices. Where choices grow, there is rebirth into a new state of existence in the future. Where there is rebirth into a new state of existence in the future, there is rebirth, old age, and death in the future. Where there is rebirth, old age, and death in the future, I say this is full of sorrow, anguish, and distress.

3.1 If there is desire, relishing, and craving for contact as fuel ... If there is desire, relishing, and craving for mental intention as fuel ... If there is desire, relishing, and craving for consciousness as fuel, consciousness becomes established there and grows. Where consciousness is established and grows, name and form are conceived. Where name and form are conceived, there is the growth of choices. Where choices grow, there is rebirth into a new state of existence in the future. Where there is rebirth into a new state of existence in the future, there is rebirth, old age, and death in the future. Where there is rebirth, old age, and death in the future, I say this is full of sorrow, anguish, and distress.

4.1 Suppose an artist or painter had some dye, red lac, turmeric, indigo, or rose madder. And on a polished plank or a wall or a

canvas they'd create the form of a woman or a man, whole in its major and minor limbs.

In the same way, if there is desire, relishing, and craving for solid food, consciousness becomes established there and grows. Where consciousness is established and grows, name and form are conceived. Where name and form are conceived, there is the growth of choices. Where choices grow, there is rebirth into a new state of existence in the future. Where there is rebirth into a new state of existence in the future, there is rebirth, old age, and death in the future. Where there is rebirth, old age, and death in the future, I say this is full of sorrow, anguish, and distress. 4.2

If there is desire, relishing, and craving for contact as fuel ... If there is desire, relishing, and craving for mental intention as fuel ... If there is desire, relishing, and craving for consciousness as fuel, consciousness becomes established there and grows. Where consciousness is established and grows, name and form are conceived. Where name and form are conceived, there is the growth of choices. Where choices grow, there is rebirth into a new state of existence in the future. Where there is rebirth into a new state of existence in the future, there is rebirth, old age, and death in the future. Where there is rebirth, old age, and death in the future, I say this is full of sorrow, anguish, and distress. 5.1

If there is no desire, relishing, and craving for solid food, consciousness does not become established there and doesn't grow. Where consciousness is not established and doesn't grow, name and form are not conceived. Where name and form are not conceived, there is no growth of choices. Where choices don't grow, there is no rebirth into a new state of existence in the future. Where there is no rebirth into a new state of existence in the future, there is no rebirth, old age, and death in the future. Where there is no rebirth, old age, and death in the future, I say there's no sorrow, anguish, and distress. 6.1

If there is no desire, relishing, and craving for contact as fuel ... If there is no desire, relishing, and craving for mental intention as fuel 7.1

... If there is no desire, relishing, and craving for consciousness as fuel, consciousness doesn't become established there and doesn't grow. Where consciousness is not established and doesn't grow, name and form are not conceived. Where name and form are not conceived, there is no growth of choices. Where choices don't grow, there is no rebirth into a new state of existence in the future. Where there is no rebirth into a new state of existence in the future, there is no rebirth, old age, and death in the future. Where there is no rebirth, old age, and death in the future, I say there's no sorrow, anguish, and distress.

8.1 Suppose there was a bungalow or a hall with a peaked roof, with windows on the northern, southern, or eastern side. When the sun rises and a ray of light enters through a window, where would it land?"

8.2 "On the western wall, sir."

8.3 "If there was no western wall, where would it land?"

8.4 "On the ground, sir."

8.5 "If there was no ground, where would it land?"

8.6 "In water, sir."

8.7 "If there was no water, where would it land?"

8.8 "It wouldn't land, sir."

8.9 "In the same way, if there is no desire, relishing, and craving for solid food, consciousness does not become established there and doesn't grow. ...

9.1 If there is no desire, relishing, and craving for contact as fuel ... If there is no desire, relishing, and craving for mental intention as fuel ... If there is no desire, relishing, and craving for consciousness as fuel, consciousness doesn't become established there and doesn't grow. Where consciousness is not established and doesn't grow, name and form are not conceived. Where name and form are not conceived, there is no growth of choices. Where choices don't grow, there is no rebirth into a new state of existence in the future. Where there is no rebirth into a new state of existence in the future, there is no rebirth, old age, and death in the future. Where there is

no rebirth, old age, and death in the future, I say there's no sorrow, anguish, and distress."

SN 12.65

## The City

*Nagarasutta*

At Sāvattthī.

1.1

"Mendicants, before my awakening—when I was still unawakened but intent on awakening—I thought: 'Alas, this world has fallen into trouble. It's born, grows old, dies, passes away, and is reborn, yet it doesn't understand how to escape from this suffering, from old age and death. Oh, when will an escape be found from this suffering, from old age and death?' Then it occurred to me: 'When what exists is there old age and death? What is a condition for old age and death?' Then, through rational application of mind, I comprehended with wisdom: 'When rebirth exists there's old age and death. Rebirth is a condition for old age and death.' 1.2

Then it occurred to me: 'When what exists is there rebirth? ... 2.1 continued existence ... grasping ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense fields ... name and form ... What is a condition for name and form?' Then, through rational application of mind, I comprehended with wisdom: 'When consciousness exists there are name and form. Consciousness is a condition for name and form.' Then it occurred to me: 'When what exists is there consciousness? What is a condition for consciousness?' Then, through rational application of mind, I comprehended with wisdom: 'When name and form exist there's consciousness. Name and form are a condition for consciousness.'

Then it occurred to me: This consciousness turns back from 3.1 name and form, and doesn't go beyond that. This is the extent to which one may be reborn, grow old, die, pass away, or reappear. That is: name and form are conditions for consciousness. Consciousness is a condition for name and form. Name and form are

conditions for the six sense fields. The six sense fields are conditions for contact. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering originates. 'Origination, origination.' Such was the vision, knowledge, wisdom, realization, and light that arose in me regarding teachings not learned before from another.

- 4.1 Then it occurred to me: 'When what doesn't exist is there no old age and death? When what ceases do old age and death cease?' Then, through rational application of mind, I comprehended with wisdom: 'When rebirth doesn't exist there is no old age and death. When rebirth ceases old age and death cease.' Then it occurred to me: 'When what doesn't exist is there no rebirth ... continued existence ... grasping ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... six sense fields ... name and form? When what ceases do name and form cease?' Then, through rational application of mind, I comprehended with wisdom: 'When consciousness doesn't exist there is no name and form. When consciousness ceases name and form cease.'
- 5.1 Then it occurred to me: 'When what doesn't exist is there no consciousness? When what ceases does consciousness cease?' Then, through rational application of mind, I comprehended with wisdom: 'When name and form don't exist, there is no consciousness. When name and form cease, consciousness ceases.'
- 6.1 Then it occurred to me: I have discovered the path to awakening. That is: When name and form cease, consciousness ceases. When consciousness ceases, name and form cease. When name and form cease, the six sense fields cease. When the six sense fields cease, contact ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases. 'Cessation, cessation.' Such was the vision, knowledge, wisdom, realization, and light that arose in me regarding teachings not learned before from another.
- 7.1 Suppose a person was walking through a forest. They'd see an ancient path, an ancient route traveled by humans in the past. Following it along, they'd see an ancient city, an ancient capital, inhabited by humans in the past. It was lovely, complete with parks,



groves, lotus ponds, and embankments. Then that person would inform a king or their chief minister: ‘Please sir, you should know this. While walking through a forest I saw an ancient path, an ancient route traveled by humans in the past. Following it along I saw an ancient city, an ancient capital, inhabited by humans in the past. It was lovely, complete with parks, groves, lotus ponds, and embankments. Sir, you should rebuild that city!’ Then that king or their chief minister would have that city rebuilt. And after some time that city was successful and prosperous, populous, full of people, attained to growth and expansion. In the same way, I saw an ancient path, an ancient route traveled by fully awakened Buddhas in the past.

And what is that ancient path, the ancient route traveled by fully 8.1  
awakened Buddhas in the past? It is simply this noble eightfold path, that is: right view, right thought, right speech, right action, right livelihood, right effort, right mindfulness, and right immersion. This is that ancient path, the ancient route traveled by fully awakened Buddhas in the past.

Following it along, I directly knew old age and death, their ori- 8.5  
gin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation. Following it along, I directly knew rebirth ... continued existence ... grasping ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense fields ... name and form ... consciousness ... Following it along, I directly knew choices, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to their cessation.

Having directly known this, I told the monks, nuns, laymen, 8.24  
and laywomen. And that’s how this spiritual life has become successful and prosperous, extensive, popular, widespread, and well proclaimed wherever there are gods and humans.”

SN 12.66

## Self-examination

*Sammasasutta*

- 1.1 SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying in the land of the Kurus, near the Kuru town named Kammāsadamma. There the Buddha addressed the mendicants, “Mendicants!”
- 1.5 “Venerable sir,” they replied. The Buddha said this:
- 1.7 “Mendicants, do you perform inner self-examination?”
- 1.8 When he said this, one of the mendicants said to the Buddha, “Sir, I perform inner self-examination.”
- 1.10 “But mendicant, how do you perform inner self-examination?” Then that mendicant answered, but the Buddha was not happy with the answer.
- 2.1 When he had spoken, Venerable Ānanda said to the Buddha, “Now is the time, Blessed One! Now is the time, Holy One! Let the Buddha speak of the inner self-examination. The mendicants will listen and remember it.”
- 2.4 “Well then, Ānanda, listen and apply your mind well, I will speak.”
- 2.5 “Yes, sir,” they replied. The Buddha said this:
- 3.1 “Take a mendicant who performs inner self-examination: ‘The suffering that arises in the world starting with old age and death takes many and diverse forms. But what is the source of this suffering? When what exists do old age and death come to be? And when what does not exist do old age and death not come to be?’ While examining they know: ‘The suffering that arises in the world starting with old age and death takes many and diverse forms. The source of this suffering is attachment. When attachments exist old age and death come to be. And when attachments do not exist old age and death don’t come to be.’ They understand old age and death, their origin, their cessation, and the fitting practice for their cessation. And they practice in line with that path. This is called a

mendicant who is practicing for the complete ending of suffering, for the cessation of old age and death.

They perform further inner self-examination: ‘But what is the source of this attachment? When what exists does attachment come to be? And when what does not exist does attachment not come to be?’ While examining they know: ‘The source of this attachment is craving. When craving exists attachments come to be. And when craving doesn’t exist attachments don’t come to be.’ They understand attachments, their origin, their cessation, and the fitting practice for their cessation. And they practice in line with that path. This is called a mendicant who is practicing for the complete ending of suffering, for the cessation of attachments. 4.1

They perform further inner self-examination: ‘But where does that craving arise and where does it settle?’ While examining they know: ‘That craving arises and settles on whatever in the world seems nice and pleasant. And what in the world seems nice and pleasant? The eye in the world seems nice and pleasant, and it is there that craving arises and settles. The ear ... nose ... tongue ... body ... mind in the world seems nice and pleasant, and it is there that craving arises and settles.’ 5.1

There were ascetics and brahmins of the past who saw the things that seem nice and pleasant in the world as permanent, as pleasurable, as self, as healthy, and as safe. Their craving grew. As their craving grew, their attachments grew. As their attachments grew, their suffering grew. And as their suffering grew, they were not freed from rebirth, old age, and death, from sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress. They were not freed from suffering, I say. 6.1

There will be ascetics and brahmins in the future who will see the things that seem nice and pleasant in the world as permanent, as pleasurable, as self, as healthy, and as safe. Their craving will grow. As their craving grows, their attachments will grow. As their attachments grow, their suffering will grow. And as their suffering grows, they will not be freed from rebirth, old age, and death, from 7.1

sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress. They will not be freed from suffering, I say.

8.1 There are ascetics and brahmins in the present who see the things that seem nice and pleasant in the world as permanent, as pleasurable, as self, as healthy, and as safe. Their craving grows. As their craving grows, their attachments grow. As their attachments grow, their suffering grows. And as their suffering grows, they are not freed from rebirth, old age, and death, from sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress. They are not freed from suffering, I say.

9.1 Suppose there was a bronze goblet of beverage that had a nice color, aroma, and flavor. But it was mixed with poison. Then along comes a man struggling in the oppressive heat, weary, thirsty, and parched. They'd say to him: 'Here, mister, this bronze goblet of beverage has a nice color, aroma, and flavor. But it's mixed with poison. Drink it if you like. If you drink it, the color, aroma, and flavor will be appetizing, but it will result in death or deadly pain.' He wouldn't reject that beverage. Hastily, without reflection, he'd drink it, resulting in death or deadly pain.

9.11 In the same way, there are ascetics and brahmins of the past ... future ... There are ascetics and brahmins in the present who see the things that seem nice and pleasant in the world as permanent, as pleasurable, as self, as healthy, and as safe. Their craving grows. As their craving grows, their attachments grow. As their attachments grow, their suffering grows. And as their suffering grows, they are not freed from rebirth, old age, and death, from sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress. They are not freed from suffering, I say.

10.1 There were ascetics and brahmins of the past who saw the things that seem nice and pleasant in the world as impermanent, as suffering, as not-self, as diseased, and as dangerous. They gave up craving. Giving up craving, they gave up attachments. Giving up attachments, they gave up suffering. Giving up suffering, they were freed from rebirth, old age, and death, from sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress. They were freed from suffering, I say.

There will be ascetics and brahmins in the future who will see the things that seem nice and pleasant in the world as impermanent, as suffering, as not-self, as diseased, and as dangerous. They will give up craving. Giving up craving ... they will be freed from suffering, I say. 11.1

There are ascetics and brahmins in the present who see the things that seem nice and pleasant in the world as impermanent, as suffering, as not-self, as diseased, and as dangerous. They give up craving. Giving up craving, they give up attachments. Giving up attachments, they give up suffering. Giving up suffering, they are freed from rebirth, old age, and death, from sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress. They are freed from suffering, I say. 12.1

Suppose there was a bronze goblet of beverage that had a nice color, aroma, and flavor. But it was mixed with poison. Then along comes a man struggling in the oppressive heat, weary, thirsty, and parched. They'd say to him: 'Here, mister, this bronze goblet of beverage has a nice color, aroma, and flavor. But it's mixed with poison. Drink it if you like. If you drink it, its nice color, aroma, and flavor will refresh you. But drinking it will result in death or deadly pain.' Then that man might think: 'I could quench my thirst with water, whey, seasoned drink, or broth. But I shouldn't drink that beverage, for it would be for my lasting harm and suffering.' He'd reject that beverage. After appraisal, he wouldn't drink it, and it wouldn't result in death or deadly pain. 13.1

In the same way, there were ascetics and brahmins of the past who saw the things that seem nice and pleasant in the world as impermanent, as suffering, as not-self, as diseased, and as dangerous. They gave up craving. Giving up craving, they gave up attachments. Giving up attachments, they gave up suffering. Giving up suffering, they were freed from rebirth, old age, and death, from sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress. They were freed from suffering, I say. 13.13

There will be ascetics and brahmins in the future ... There are ascetics and brahmins in the present who see the things that seem 14.1

nice and pleasant in the world as impermanent, as suffering, as not-self, as diseased, and as dangerous. They give up craving. Giving up craving, they give up attachments. Giving up attachments, they give up suffering. Giving up suffering, they are freed from rebirth, old age, and death, from sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress. They are freed from suffering, I say.”

SN 12.67

## Bundles of Reeds

*NaḬakalāpīsutta*

- 1.1 At one time Venerable Sāriputta and Venerable Mahākoṭṭhita were staying near Varanasi, in the deer park at Isipatana.
- 1.2 Then in the late afternoon, Venerable Mahākoṭṭhita came out of retreat, went to Venerable Sāriputta, and exchanged greetings with him. When the greetings and polite conversation were over, he sat down to one side and said to Sāriputta:
- 1.4 “Well, Reverend Sāriputta, are old age and death made by oneself? Or by another? Or by both oneself and another? Or do they arise by chance, not made by oneself or another?”
- 1.5 “No, Reverend Koṭṭhita, old age and death are not made by oneself, nor by another, nor by both oneself and another, nor do they arise by chance, not made by oneself or another. Rather, rebirth is a condition for old age and death.”
- 2.1 “Well, Reverend Sāriputta, is rebirth made by oneself? Or by another? Or by both oneself and another? Or does it arise by chance, not made by oneself or another?”
- 2.2 “No, Reverend Koṭṭhita, rebirth is not made by oneself, nor by another, nor by both oneself and another, nor does it arise by chance, not made by oneself or another. Rather, continued existence is a condition for rebirth.”
- 3.1 “Well, Reverend Sāriputta, is continued existence made by oneself? ...” ... “Is grasping made by oneself? ...” ... “Is craving made by oneself? ...” ... “Is feeling made by oneself? ...” ... “Is contact

made by oneself? ...” ... “Are the six sense fields made by oneself? ...” ... “Well, Reverend Sāriputta, are name and form made by oneself? Or by another? Or by both oneself and another? Or do they arise by chance, not made by oneself or another?”

“No, Reverend Koṭṭhita, name and form are not made by oneself, 3.8  
nor by another, nor by both oneself and another, nor do they arise  
by chance, not made by oneself or another. Rather, consciousness  
is a condition for name and form.”

“Well, Reverend Sāriputta, is consciousness made by oneself? 4.1  
Or by another? Or by both oneself and another? Or does it arise  
by chance, not made by oneself or another?”

“No, Reverend Koṭṭhita, consciousness is not made by oneself, 4.2  
nor by another, nor by both oneself and another, nor does it arise  
by chance, not made by oneself or another. Rather, name and form  
are conditions for consciousness.”

“Just now I understood you to say: ‘No, Reverend Koṭṭhita, 5.1  
name and form are not made by oneself, nor by another, nor by  
both oneself and another, nor do they arise by chance, not made by  
oneself or another. Rather, consciousness is a condition for name  
and form.’

But I also understood you to say: ‘No, Reverend Koṭṭhita, con- 6.1  
sciousness is not made by oneself, nor by another, nor by both one-  
self and another, nor does it arise by chance, not made by oneself or  
another. Rather, name and form are conditions for consciousness.’

How then should we see the meaning of this statement?” 7.1

“Well then, reverend, I shall give you a simile. For by means of 7.2  
a simile some sensible people understand the meaning of what is  
said. Suppose there were two bundles of reeds leaning up against  
each other.

In the same way, name and form are conditions for conscio- 7.5  
ness. Consciousness is a condition for name and form. Name and  
form are conditions for the six sense fields. The six sense fields are  
conditions for contact. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering  
originates. If the first of those bundles of reeds were to be pulled

away, the other would collapse. And if the other were to be pulled away, the first would collapse.

7.12 In the same way, when name and form cease, consciousness ceases. When consciousness ceases, name and form cease. When name and form cease, the six sense fields cease. When the six sense fields cease, contact ceases. ... That is how this entire mass of suffering ceases.”

8.1 “It’s incredible, Reverend Sāriputta, it’s amazing! How well spoken this was by Venerable Sāriputta! And we can express our agreement with Venerable Sāriputta’s statement on these thirty-six grounds.

9.1 If a mendicant teaches Dhamma for disillusionment, dispassion, and cessation regarding old age and death, they’re qualified to be called a ‘mendicant who speaks on Dhamma’. If they practice for disillusionment, dispassion, and cessation regarding old age and death, they’re qualified to be called a ‘mendicant who practices in line with the teaching’. If they’re freed by not grasping by disillusionment, dispassion, and cessation regarding old age and death, they’re qualified to be called a ‘mendicant who has attained extinguishment in this very life’. If a mendicant teaches Dhamma for disillusionment regarding rebirth ... continued existence ... grasping ... craving ... feeling ... contact ... the six sense fields ... name and form ... consciousness ... choices ... If a mendicant teaches Dhamma for disillusionment, dispassion, and cessation regarding ignorance, they’re qualified to be called a ‘mendicant who speaks on Dhamma’. If they practice for disillusionment, dispassion, and cessation regarding ignorance, they’re qualified to be called a ‘mendicant who practices in line with the teaching’. If they’re freed by not grasping by disillusionment, dispassion, and cessation regarding ignorance, they’re qualified to be called a ‘mendicant who has attained extinguishment in this very life.’”



SN 12.68

## At Kosambī

*Kosambisutta*

At one time the venerables Musīla, Saviṭṭha, Nārada, and Ānanda 1.1  
were staying near Kosambī in Ghosita's monastery. Then Venerable  
Saviṭṭha said to Venerable Musīla:

“Reverend Musīla, apart from faith, endorsement, oral trans- 1.3  
mission, reasoned train of thought, or acceptance of a view after  
deliberation, do you know for yourself that rebirth is a condition  
for old age and death?”

“Reverend Saviṭṭha, apart from faith, endorsement, oral trans- 1.5  
mission, reasoned train of thought, or acceptance of a view after  
deliberation, I know and see that rebirth is a condition for old age  
and death.”

“Reverend Musīla, apart from faith, endorsement, oral trans- 2.1  
mission, reasoned train of thought, or acceptance of a view after  
deliberation, do you know for yourself that continued existence  
is a condition for rebirth ... grasping is a condition for continued  
existence ... craving is a condition for grasping ... feeling is a con-  
dition for craving ... contact is a condition for feeling ... the six  
sense fields are conditions for contact ... name and form are con-  
ditions for the six sense fields ... consciousness is a condition for  
name and form ... choices are a condition for consciousness ...  
ignorance is a condition for choices?”

“Reverend Saviṭṭha, apart from faith, endorsement, oral trans- 2.12  
mission, reasoned train of thought, or acceptance of a view after de-  
liberation, I know and see that ignorance is a condition for choices.”

“Reverend Musīla, apart from faith, endorsement, oral trans- 3.1  
mission, reasoned train of thought, or acceptance of a view after  
deliberation, do you know for yourself that when rebirth ceases,  
old age and death cease?”

“Reverend Saviṭṭha, apart from faith, endorsement, oral trans- 3.3  
mission, reasoned train of thought, or acceptance of a view after

deliberation, I know and see that when rebirth ceases, old age and death cease.”

- 4.1 “Reverend Musīla, apart from faith, endorsement, oral transmission, reasoned train of thought, or acceptance of a view after deliberation, do you know for yourself that when continued existence ceases, rebirth ceases ... when grasping ceases, continued existence ceases ... when craving ceases, grasping ceases ... when feeling ceases, craving ceases ... when contact ceases, feeling ceases ... when the six sense fields cease, contact ceases ... when name and form cease, the six sense fields cease ... when consciousness ceases name and form cease ... when choices cease consciousness ceases ... when ignorance ceases, choices cease?”
- 4.12 “Reverend Saviṭṭha, apart from faith, endorsement, oral transmission, reasoned train of thought, or acceptance of a view after deliberation, I know and see that when ignorance ceases, choices cease.”
- 5.1 “Reverend Musīla, apart from faith, endorsement, oral transmission, reasoned train of thought, or acceptance of a view after deliberation, do you know for yourself that the cessation of continued existence is extinguishment?”
- 5.3 “Reverend Saviṭṭha, apart from faith, endorsement, oral transmission, reasoned train of thought, or acceptance of a view after deliberation, I know and see that the cessation of continued existence is extinguishment.”
- 6.1 “Then Venerable Musīla is a perfected one, with defilements ended.” When he said this, Musīla kept silent.
- 7.1 Then Venerable Nārada said to Venerable Saviṭṭha, “Reverend Saviṭṭha, please let me answer these questions. Ask me and I will answer them for you.”
- 7.5 “By all means, Venerable Nārada, try these questions. I’ll ask you and you can answer them for me.”
- 8.1 (Saviṭṭha repeats exactly the same series of questions, and Nārada answers just as Musīla did.)

“Reverend Nārada, apart from faith, endorsement, oral transmission, reasoned train of thought, or acceptance of a view after deliberation, do you know for yourself that the cessation of continued existence is extinguishment?” 12.1

“Reverend Saviṭṭha, apart from faith, endorsement, oral transmission, reasoned train of thought, or acceptance of a view after deliberation, I know and see that the cessation of continued existence is extinguishment.” 12.3

“Then Venerable Nārada is a perfected one, with defilements ended.” 13.1

“I have truly seen clearly with right wisdom that the cessation of continued existence is extinguishment. Yet I am not a perfected one. Suppose there was a well on a desert road that had neither rope nor bucket. Then along comes a person struggling in the oppressive heat, weary, thirsty, and parched. They’d know that there was water, but they couldn’t physically touch it. 13.2

In the same way, I have truly seen clearly with right wisdom that the cessation of continued existence is extinguishment. Yet I am not a perfected one.” 13.6

When he said this, Venerable Ānanda said to Venerable Saviṭṭha, “Reverend Saviṭṭha, what do you have to say to Venerable Nārada when he speaks like this?” 14.1

“Reverend Ānanda, I have nothing to say to Venerable Nārada when he speaks like this, except what is good and wholesome.” 14.3

SN 12.69

## Surge

*Upayantisutta*

SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near Sāvathī in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. 1.1

“Mendicants, when the ocean surges it makes the rivers surge. When the rivers surge they make the streams surge. When the 1.4

streams surge they make the lakes surge. When the lakes surge they make the ponds surge.

- 1.5 In the same way, when ignorance surges it makes choices surge. When choices surge they make consciousness surge. When consciousness surges it makes name and form surge. When name and form surge they make the six sense fields surge. When the six sense fields surge they make contact surge. When contact surges it makes feeling surge. When feeling surges it makes craving surge. When craving surges it makes grasping surge. When grasping surges it makes continued existence surge. When continued existence surges it makes rebirth surge. When rebirth surges it makes old age and death surge.

- 2.1 When the ocean recedes it makes the rivers recede. When the rivers recede they make the streams recede. When the streams recede they make the lakes recede. When the lakes recede they make the ponds recede.

- 2.2 In the same way, when ignorance recedes it makes choices recede. When choices recede they make consciousness recede. When consciousness recedes it makes name and form recede. When name and form recede they make the six sense fields recede. When the six sense fields recede they make contact recede. When contact recedes it makes feeling recede. When feeling recedes it makes craving recede. When craving recedes it makes grasping recede. When grasping recedes it makes continued existence recede. When continued existence recedes it makes rebirth recede. When rebirth recedes it makes old age and death recede.”

SN 12.70

## The Wanderer Susīma

*Susimaparibbājakasutta*

- 1.1 SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near Rājagaha, in the Bamboo Grove, the squirrels’ feeding ground.

Now at that time the Buddha was honored, respected, revered, 1.3  
venerated, and esteemed. And he received robes, almsfood, lodg-  
ings, and medicines and supplies for the sick. And the men-  
dicant Saṅgha was also honored, respected, revered, venerated,  
and esteemed. And they received robes, almsfood, lodgings, and  
medicines and supplies for the sick. But the wanderers who fol-  
lowed other religions were not honored, respected, revered, ven-  
erated, and esteemed. And they didn't receive robes, almsfood,  
lodgings, and medicines and supplies for the sick.

Now at that time the wanderer Susīma was residing at Rājagaha 2.1  
together with a large community of wanderers.

Then his community said to Susīma, "Reverend Susīma, please 2.2  
lead the spiritual life with the ascetic Gotama. Memorize that  
teaching and have us recite it with you. When we've memorized  
it we'll recite it to the laity. In this way we too will be honored,  
respected, revered, venerated, and esteemed. And we'll receive  
robes, almsfood, lodgings, and medicines and supplies for the sick."

"Yes, reverends," replied Susīma. Then he went to Venerable 2.7  
Ānanda, and exchanged greetings with him. When the greetings  
and polite conversation were over, he sat down to one side and said  
to Ānanda, "Reverend Ānanda, I wish to lead the spiritual life in  
this teaching and training."

Then Ānanda took Susīma to the Buddha, bowed, sat down to 3.1  
one side, and said to him, "Sir, this wanderer Susīma says that he  
wishes to lead the spiritual life in this teaching and training."

"Well then, Ānanda, give Susīma the going forth." And the wan- 3.4  
derer Susīma received the going forth, the ordination in the Bud-  
dha's presence.

Now at that time several mendicants had declared their enlight- 4.1  
enment in the Buddha's presence: "We understand: 'Rebirth is  
ended, the spiritual journey has been completed, what had to be  
done has been done, there is nothing further for this place.'"

Venerable Susīma heard about this. He went up to those men- 4.3  
dicants, and exchanged greetings with them. When the greetings

and polite conversation were over, he sat down to one side and said to those mendicants, “Is it really true that the venerables have declared enlightenment in the Buddha’s presence?”

4.10 “Yes, reverend.”

5.1 “But knowing and seeing thus, do you wield the many kinds of psychic power? That is, multiplying yourselves and becoming one again; appearing and disappearing; going unobstructed through a wall, a rampart, or a mountain as if through space; diving in and out of the earth as if it were water; walking on water as if it were earth; flying cross-legged through the sky like a bird; touching and stroking with the hand the sun and moon, so mighty and powerful. Do you control the body as far as the realm of divinity?”

5.2 “No, reverend.”

6.1 “Well, knowing and seeing thus do you, with clairaudence that is purified and superhuman, hear both kinds of sounds, human and heavenly, whether near or far?”

6.2 “No, reverend.”

7.1 “Well, knowing and seeing thus, do you understand the minds of other beings and individuals, having comprehended them with your mind? Do you understand mind with greed as ‘mind with greed’, and mind without greed as ‘mind without greed’? Do you understand mind with hate as ‘mind with hate’, and mind without hate as ‘mind without hate’? Do you understand mind with delusion as ‘mind with delusion’, and mind without delusion as ‘mind without delusion’? Do you understand constricted mind as ‘constricted mind’, and scattered mind as ‘scattered mind’? Do you understand expansive mind as ‘expansive mind’, and unexpansive mind as ‘unexpansive mind’? Do you understand mind that is not supreme as ‘mind that is not supreme’, and mind that is supreme as ‘mind that is supreme’? Do you understand mind immersed in samādhi as ‘mind immersed in samādhi’, and mind not immersed in samādhi as ‘mind not immersed in samādhi’? Do you understand freed mind as ‘freed mind’, and unfreed mind as ‘unfreed mind’?”

7.18 “No, reverend.”

“Well, knowing and seeing thus, do you recollect many kinds 8.1  
of past lives. That is: one, two, three, four, five, ten, twenty, thirty,  
forty, fifty, a hundred, a thousand, a hundred thousand rebirths;  
many eons of the world contracting, many eons of the world ex-  
panding, many eons of the world contracting and expanding? Do  
you remember: ‘There, I was named this, my clan was that, I looked  
like this, and that was my food. This was how I felt pleasure and  
pain, and that was how my life ended. When I passed away from  
that place I was reborn somewhere else. There, too, I was named  
this, my clan was that, I looked like this, and that was my food. This  
was how I felt pleasure and pain, and that was how my life ended.  
When I passed away from that place I was reborn here.’ Do you  
recollect your many kinds of past lives, with features and details?”

“No, reverend.”

8.2

“Well, knowing and seeing thus, do you, with clairvoyance that 9.1  
is purified and superhuman, see sentient beings passing away and  
being reborn—inferior and superior, beautiful and ugly, in a good  
place or a bad place—and understand how sentient beings are  
reborn according to their deeds? ‘These dear beings did bad things  
by way of body, speech, and mind. They denounced the noble  
ones; they had wrong view; and they chose to act out of that wrong  
view. When their body breaks up, after death, they’re reborn in a  
place of loss, a bad place, the underworld, hell. These dear beings,  
however, did good things by way of body, speech, and mind. They  
never denounced the noble ones; they had right view; and they  
chose to act out of that right view. When their body breaks up,  
after death, they’re reborn in a good place, a heavenly realm.’ And  
so, with clairvoyance that is purified and superhuman, do you  
see sentient beings passing away and being reborn—inferior and  
superior, beautiful and ugly, in a good place or a bad place. And do  
you understand how sentient beings are reborn according to their  
deeds?”

“No, reverend.”

9.2

- 10.1 “Well, knowing and seeing thus, do you have direct meditative experience of the peaceful liberations that are formless, transcending form?”
- 10.2 “No, reverend.”
- 11.1 “Well now, venerables, how could there be such a declaration when these things are not attained?”
- 11.2 “Reverend Susīma, we are freed by wisdom.”
- 12.1 “I don’t understand the detailed meaning of what you have said in brief. Please teach me this matter so I can understand the detailed meaning.”
- 12.3 “Reverend Susīma, whether you understand or not, we are freed by wisdom.”
- 13.1 Then Susīma went to the Buddha, bowed, sat down to one side, and informed the Buddha of all he had discussed with those mendicants.
- 13.3 “Susīma, first comes knowledge of the stability of natural principles. Afterwards there is knowledge of extinguishment.”
- 14.1 “Sir, I don’t understand the detailed meaning of what you have said in brief. Please teach me this matter so I can understand the detailed meaning.”
- 14.3 “Susīma, whether you understand or not, first comes knowledge of the stability of natural principles. Afterwards there is knowledge of extinguishment.
- 15.1 What do you think, Susīma? Is form permanent or impermanent?”
- 15.3 “Impermanent, sir.”
- 15.4 “But if it’s impermanent, is it suffering or happiness?”
- 15.5 “Suffering, sir.”
- 15.6 “But if it’s impermanent, suffering, and perishable, is it fit to be regarded thus: ‘This is mine, I am this, this is my self’?”
- 15.8 “No, sir.”
- 15.9 “Is feeling permanent or impermanent?”
- 15.10 “Impermanent, sir.”
- 15.11 “But if it’s impermanent, is it suffering or happiness?”



- “Suffering, sir.” 15.12
- “But if it’s impermanent, suffering, and perishable, is it fit to be regarded thus: ‘This is mine, I am this, this is my self’?” 15.13
- “No, sir.” 15.15
- “Is perception permanent or impermanent?” 15.16
- “Impermanent, sir.” ... 15.17
- “Are choices permanent or impermanent?” 15.18
- “Impermanent, sir.” 15.19
- “But if they’re impermanent, are they suffering or happiness?” 15.20
- “Suffering, sir.” 15.21
- “But if they’re impermanent, suffering, and perishable, are they fit to be regarded thus: ‘This is mine, I am this, this is my self’?” 15.22
- “No, sir.” 15.24
- “Is consciousness permanent or impermanent?” 15.25
- “Impermanent, sir.” 15.26
- “But if it’s impermanent, is it suffering or happiness?” 15.27
- “Suffering, sir.” 15.28
- “But if it’s impermanent, suffering, and perishable, is it fit to be regarded thus: ‘This is mine, I am this, this is my self’?” 15.29
- “No, sir.” 15.31
- “So, Susīma, you should truly see any kind of form at all—past, future, or present; internal or external; solid or subtle; inferior or superior; far or near: *all* form—with right understanding: ‘This is not mine, I am not this, this is not my self.’ You should truly see any kind of feeling at all—past, future, or present; internal or external; solid or subtle; inferior or superior; far or near: *all* feeling—with right understanding: ‘This is not mine, I am not this, this is not my self.’ You should truly see any kind of perception at all—past, future, or present; internal or external; solid or subtle; inferior or superior; far or near: *all* perception—with right understanding: ‘This is not mine, I am not this, this is not my self.’ You should truly see any kind of choices at all—past, future, or present; internal or external; solid or subtle; inferior or superior; far or near: *all* choices—with right understanding: ‘This is not mine, I am not this,

this is not my self.’ You should truly see any kind of consciousness at all—past, future, or present; internal or external; solid or subtle; inferior or superior; far or near: *all* consciousness—with right understanding: ‘This is not mine, I am not this, this is not my self.’

17.1 Seeing this, a learned noble disciple grows disillusioned with form, feeling, perception, choices, and consciousness. Being disillusioned, desire fades away. When desire fades away they’re freed. When they’re freed, they know they’re freed.

17.3 They understand: ‘Rebirth is ended, the spiritual journey has been completed, what had to be done has been done, there is nothing further for this place.’

18.1 Susīma, do you see that rebirth is a condition for old age and death?”

18.2 “Yes, sir.”

18.3 “Do you see that continued existence is a condition for rebirth?”

18.4 “Yes, sir.”

18.5 “Do you see that grasping is a condition for continued existence?”

18.6 “Yes, sir.”

18.7 “Do you see that craving is a condition for grasping?”

18.8 “Yes, sir.”

18.9 “Do you see that feeling is a condition for craving ... contact is a condition for feeling ... the six sense fields are conditions for contact ... name and form are conditions for the six sense fields ... consciousness is a condition for name and form ... choices are a condition for consciousness ... ignorance is a condition for choices?”

18.16 “Yes, sir.”

19.1 “Do you see that when rebirth ceases old age and death cease?”

19.2 “Yes, sir.”

19.3 “Do you see that when continued existence ceases rebirth ceases?”

19.4 “Yes, sir.”

“Do you see that when grasping ceases continued existence 19.5  
ceases ... when craving ceases, grasping ceases ... when feeling  
ceases, craving ceases ... when contact ceases, feeling ceases ...  
when the six sense fields cease, contact ceases ... when name and  
form cease, the six sense fields cease ... when consciousness ceases  
name and form cease ... when choices cease consciousness ceases  
... when ignorance ceases choices cease?”

“Yes, sir.” 19.14

“But knowing and seeing thus, do you wield the many kinds of 20.1  
psychic power? ...”

“No, sir.” 20.2

“Well, knowing and seeing thus do you, with clairaudience that 21.1  
is purified and superhuman, hear both kinds of sounds, human and  
heavenly, whether near or far?”

“No, sir.” 21.2

“Well, knowing and seeing thus, do you understand the minds 22.1  
of other beings and individuals, having comprehended them with  
your mind? ...”

“No, sir.” 22.4

“Well, knowing and seeing thus, do you recollect many kinds of 23.1  
past lives, with features and details?”

“No, sir.” 23.2

“Well, knowing and seeing thus, do you, with clairvoyance that 24.1  
is purified and superhuman, see sentient beings passing away and  
being reborn ... according to their deeds?”

“No, sir.” 24.2

“Well, knowing and seeing thus, do you have direct meditative 25.1  
experience of the peaceful liberations that are formless, transcend-  
ing form?”

“No, sir.” 25.2

“Well now, Susīma, how could there be such a declaration when 26.1  
these things are not attained?”

Then Venerable Susīma bowed with his head at the Buddha’s 27.1  
feet and said, “I have made a mistake, sir. It was foolish, stupid,

and unskillful of me to go forth as a thief in such a well-explained teaching and training. Please, sir, accept my mistake for what it is, so I will restrain myself in future.”

- 28.1 “Indeed, Susīma, you made a mistake. It was foolish, stupid, and unskillful of you to go forth as a thief in such a well-explained teaching and training. Suppose they were to arrest a bandit, a criminal and present him to the king, saying: ‘Your Majesty, this is a bandit, a criminal. Punish him as you will.’ The king would say: ‘Go, my men, and tie this man’s arms tightly behind his back with a strong rope. Shave his head and march him from street to street and from square to square to the beating of a harsh drum. Then take him out the south gate and there, to the south of the city, chop off his head.’ The king’s men would do as they were told. What do you think, Susīma? Wouldn’t that man experience pain and distress because of that?”

28.9 “Yes, sir.”

- 29.1 “Although that man would experience pain and distress because of that, going forth as a thief in such a well-explained teaching and training has a more painful and bitter result. And it even leads to the underworld. But since you have recognized your mistake for what it is, and have dealt with it properly, I accept it. For it is growth in the training of the Noble One to recognize a mistake for what it is, deal with it properly, and commit to restraint in the future.”

# The Chapter on Ascetics and Brahmins

SN 12.71

## Old Age and Death

*Jarāmaraṇasutta*

SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near 1.1  
Sāvatthī in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery.

“Mendicants, there are ascetics and brahmins who don’t un- 1.4  
derstand old age and death, their origin, their cessation, and the  
practice that leads to their cessation. I don’t deem them as true  
ascetics and brahmins. Those venerables don’t realize the goal of  
life as an ascetic or brahmin, and don’t live having realized it with  
their own insight.

There are ascetics and brahmins who do understand old age and 2.1  
death, their origin, their cessation, and the practice that leads to  
their cessation. I deem them as true ascetics and brahmins. Those  
venerables realize the goal of life as an ascetic or brahmin, and live  
having realized it with their own insight.”

SN 12.72–81

## A Set of Ten on Rebirth, Etc.

*Jātisuttādidāsaka*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 “... they don’t understand rebirth ...”
- 2.1 “... continued existence ...”
- 3.1 “... grasping ...”
- 4.1 “... craving ...”
- 5.1 “... feeling ...”
- 6.1 “... contact ...”
- 7.1 “... the six sense fields ...”
- 8.1 “... name and form ...”
- 9.1 “... consciousness ...”
- 10.1 “... choices ...
- 10.2 ... they understand ...”

# *CONSECUTIVE REPETITIONS*

# The Teacher, etc.

SN 12.82

## The Teacher

*Satthussutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

1.2 “Mendicants, one who does not truly know or see old age and death should seek the Teacher so as to truly know old age and death. One who does not truly know or see the origin of old age and death should seek the Teacher so as to truly know the origin of old age and death. One who does not truly know or see the cessation of old age and death should seek the Teacher so as to truly know the cessation of old age and death. One who does not truly know or see the practice that leads to the cessation of old age and death should seek the Teacher so as to truly know the practice that leads to the cessation of old age and death.”

*(All the abbreviated texts should be told in full.)*

SN 12.83–92

## The Teacher (2nd)

*Dutiyasatthussuttādidāsaka*

1.1 “Mendicants, one who does not truly know or see rebirth ...”

1.1 “... continued existence ...”

1.1 “... grasping ...”



“... craving ...”	1.1
“... feeling ...”	1.1
“... contact ...”	1.1
“... the six sense fields ...”	1.1
“... name and form ...”	1.1
“... consciousness ...”	1.1
“... choices ...”	1.1
<i>(All should be treated according to the four truths.)</i>	

# Sets of Eleven on Training, Etc.

SN 12.93–213

## Sets of Eleven on Training, Etc.

*Sikkhāsuttādipeyyālaekādasaka*

- 1.1 “Mendicants, one who does not truly know or see old age and death should train so as to truly know old age and death. ...”
- 1.1 “... practice meditation ...”
- 1.1 “... rouse up enthusiasm ...”
- 1.1 “... try vigorously ...”
- 1.1 “... persevere ...”
- 1.1 “... be keen ...”
- 1.1 “... rouse up energy ...”
- 1.1 “... persist ...”
- 1.1 “... be mindful ...”
- 1.1 “... use situational awareness ...”
- 1.1 “... be diligent ...”

**The Linked Discourses on causality are complete.**

# LINKED DISCOURSES ON COMPREHENSION

# The Chapter on Comprehension

SN 13.1

## A Fingernail

*Nakhasikhāsutta*

- 1.1 SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near Sāvathī in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery.
- 1.3 Then the Buddha, picking up a little bit of dirt under his fingernail, addressed the mendicants: “What do you think, mendicants? Which is more: the little bit of dirt under my fingernail, or this great earth?”
- 2.1 “Sir, the great earth is far more. The little bit of dirt under your fingernail is tiny. Compared to the great earth, it’s not nearly a hundredth, a thousandth, or a hundred thousandth part.”
- 2.4 “In the same way, for a noble disciple accomplished in view, a person with comprehension, the suffering that’s over and done with is more, what’s left is tiny. Compared to the mass of suffering in the past that’s over and done with, it’s not nearly a hundredth, a thousandth, or a hundred thousandth part, since there are at most seven more lives. That’s how very beneficial it is to comprehend the teaching and gain the vision of the teaching.”

SN 13.2

## A Lotus Pond

*Pokkharāṇīsutta*

At Sāvatthī. 1.1

“Mendicants, suppose there was a lotus pond that was fifty leagues long, fifty leagues wide, and fifty leagues deep, full to the brim so a crow could drink from it. Then a person would pick up some water on the tip of a blade of grass. 1.2

What do you think, mendicants? Which is more: the water on the tip of the blade of grass, or the water in the lotus pond?” 1.4

“Sir, the water in the lotus pond is certainly more. The water on the tip of a blade of grass is tiny. Compared to the water in the lotus pond, it’s not nearly a hundredth, a thousandth, or a hundred thousandth part.” 2.1

“In the same way, for a person with comprehension, a noble disciple accomplished in view, the suffering that’s over and done with is more, what’s left is tiny. Compared to the mass of suffering in the past that’s over and done with, it’s not nearly a hundredth, a thousandth, or a hundred thousandth part, since there are at most seven more lives. That’s how very beneficial it is to comprehend the teaching and gain the vision of the teaching.” 3.1

SN 13.3

## Where the Waters Flow Together

*Sambhejjaudakasutta*

At Sāvatthī. 1.1

“Mendicants, there are places where the great rivers—the Ganges, Yamuna, Aciravati, Sarabhū, and Mahī—come together and converge. Suppose a person was to draw two or three drops of water from such a place. 1.2

- 1.4 What do you think, mendicants? Which is more: the two or three drops drawn out or the water in the confluence?”
- 2.1 “Sir, the water in the confluence is certainly more. The two or three drops drawn out are tiny. Compared to the water in the confluence, it’s not nearly a hundredth, a thousandth, or a hundred thousandth part.”
- 2.4 “In the same way, for a noble disciple, the suffering that’s over and done with is more ...”

## SN 13.4

## Where the Waters Flow Together (2nd)

*Dutiyasambhejjaudakasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattthī.
- 1.2 “Mendicants, there are places where the great rivers—the Ganges, Yamuna, Aciravati, Sarabhū, and Mahī—come together and converge. Suppose that water dried up and evaporated except for two or three drops.
- 1.4 What do you think, mendicants? Which is more: the water in the confluence that has dried up and evaporated, or the two or three drops left?”
- 2.1 “Sir, the water in the confluence that has dried up and evaporated is certainly more. The two or three drops left are tiny. Compared to the water in the confluence that has dried up and evaporated, it’s not nearly a hundredth, a thousandth, or a hundred thousandth part.”
- 2.4 “In the same way, for a noble disciple, the suffering that’s over and done with is more ...”

## SN 13.5

## The Earth

*Pathavīsutta*

- At Sāvattḥī. 1.1
- “Mendicants, suppose a person was to place seven clay balls the size of jujube seeds on the great earth. 1.2
- What do you think, mendicants? Which is more: the seven clay balls the size of jujube seeds, or the great earth?” 1.3
- “Sir, the great earth is certainly more. The seven clay balls the size of jujube seeds are tiny. Compared to the great earth, it’s not nearly a hundredth, a thousandth, or a hundred thousandth part.” 2.1
- “In the same way, for a noble disciple, the suffering that’s over and done with is more ...” 2.4

## SN 13.6

## The Earth (2nd)

*Dutiyapathavīsutta*

- At Sāvattḥī. 1.1
- “Mendicants, suppose the great earth was worn away and eroded except for seven clay balls the size of jujube seeds. 1.2
- What do you think, mendicants? Which is more: the great earth that has been worn away and eroded, or the seven clay balls the size of jujube seeds that are left?” 1.3
- “Sir, the great earth that has been worn away and eroded is certainly more. The seven clay balls the size of jujube seeds are tiny. Compared to the great earth that has been worn away and eroded, it’s not nearly a hundredth, a thousandth, or a hundred thousandth part.” 2.1
- “In the same way, for a noble disciple, the suffering that’s over and done with is more ...” 2.4

SN 13.7

# The Ocean

## *Samuddasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 “Mendicants, suppose a man was to draw up two or three drops of water from the ocean.
- 1.3 What do you think, mendicants? Which is more: the two or three drops drawn out or the water in the ocean?”
- 2.1 “Sir, the water in the ocean is certainly more. The two or three drops drawn out are tiny. Compared to the water in the ocean, it’s not nearly a hundredth, a thousandth, or a hundred thousandth part.”
- 2.4 “In the same way, for a noble disciple, the suffering that’s over and done with is more ...”

SN 13.8

# The Ocean (2nd)

## *Dutiyasamuddasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 “Mendicants, suppose the water in the ocean dried up and evaporated except for two or three drops.
- 1.3 What do you think, mendicants? Which is more: the water in the ocean that has dried up and evaporated, or the two or three drops left?”
- 2.1 “Sir, the water in the ocean that has dried up and evaporated is certainly more. The two or three drops left are tiny. Compared to the water in the ocean that has dried up and evaporated, it’s not nearly a hundredth, a thousandth, or a hundred thousandth part.”
- 2.4 “In the same way, for a noble disciple, the suffering that’s over and done with is more ...”



SN 13.9

## A Mountain

*Pabbatasutta*

At Sāvatthī. 1.1

“Mendicants, suppose a person was to place seven pebbles the size of mustard seeds on the Himalayas, the king of mountains. 1.2

What do you think, mendicants? Which is more: the seven pebbles the size of mustard seeds, or the Himalayas, the king of mountains?” 1.3

“Sir, the Himalayas, the king of mountains, is certainly more. 2.1  
The seven pebbles the size of mustard seeds are tiny. Compared to the Himalayas, it’s not nearly a hundredth, a thousandth, or a hundred thousandth part.”

“In the same way, for a noble disciple, the suffering that’s over and done with is more ...” 2.4

SN 13.10

## A Mountain (2nd)

*Dutiyapabbatasutta*

At Sāvatthī. 1.1

“Mendicants, suppose the Himalayas, the king of mountains, was worn away and eroded except for seven pebbles the size of mustard seeds. 1.2

What do you think, mendicants? Which is more: the portion of the Himalayas, the king of mountains, that has been worn away and eroded, or the seven pebbles the size of mustard seeds that are left?” 1.3

“Sir, the portion of the Himalayas, the king of mountains, that has been worn away and eroded is certainly more. The seven pebbles the size of mustard seeds are tiny. Compared to the Himalayas, 2.1

it's not nearly a hundredth, a thousandth, or a hundred thousandth part."

- 3.1 "In the same way, for a noble disciple accomplished in view, a person with comprehension, the suffering that's over and done with is more, what's left is tiny. Compared to the mass of suffering in the past that's over and done with, it's not nearly a hundredth, a thousandth, or a hundred thousandth part, since there are at most seven more lives. That's how very beneficial it is to comprehend the teaching and gain the vision of the teaching."

SN 13.11

## A Mountain (3rd)

*Tatīyapabbatasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 "Mendicants, suppose a person was to place down on Sineru, the king of mountains, seven pebbles the size of mung beans.
- 1.3 What do you think, mendicants? Which is more: the seven pebbles the size of mung beans, or Sineru, the king of mountains?"
- 2.1 "Sir, Sineru, the king of mountains, is certainly more. The seven pebbles the size of mung beans are tiny. Compared to Sineru, it's not nearly a hundredth, a thousandth, or a hundred thousandth part."
- 3.1 "In the same way, compared with the achievements of a noble disciple accomplished in view, the achievements of the ascetics, brahmins, and wanderers of other religions is not nearly a hundredth, a thousandth, or a hundred thousandth part. So great is the achievement of the person accomplished in view, so great is their direct knowledge."

**The Linked Discourses on comprehension are complete.**

LINKED DISCOURSES ON  
THE ELEMENTS

# The Chapter on Diversity

SN 14.1

## Diversity of Elements

*Dhātunānattasutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

1.2 “Mendicants, I will teach you the diversity of elements. Listen and apply your mind well, I will speak.”

1.4 “Yes, sir,” they replied. The Buddha said this:

2.1 “And what is the diversity of elements? The eye element, sight element, and eye consciousness element. The ear element, sound element, and ear consciousness element. The nose element, smell element, and nose consciousness element. The tongue element, taste element, and tongue consciousness element. The body element, touch element, and body consciousness element. The mind element, idea element, and mind consciousness element. This is called the diversity of elements.”

SN 14.2

## Diversity of Contacts

*Phassanānattasutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

1.2 “Mendicants, diversity of elements gives rise to diversity of contacts. And what is the diversity of elements? The eye element, ear

element, nose element, tongue element, body element, and mind element. This is called the diversity of elements.

And how does diversity of elements give rise to diversity of contacts? The eye element gives rise to eye contact. The ear element ... nose ... tongue ... body ... The mind element gives rise to mind contact. That's how diversity of elements gives rise to diversity of contacts." 2.1

SN 14.3

## Not Diversity of Contacts

*Nophassanānattasutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

"Mendicants, diversity of elements gives rise to diversity of contacts. Diversity of contacts doesn't give rise to diversity of elements. And what is the diversity of elements? The eye element, ear element, nose element, tongue element, body element, and mind element. This is called the diversity of elements. 1.2

And how does diversity of elements give rise to diversity of contacts, while diversity of contacts doesn't give rise to diversity of elements? The eye element gives rise to eye contact. Eye contact doesn't give rise to the eye element. ... The mind element gives rise to mind contact. Mind contact doesn't give rise to the mind element. That's how diversity of elements gives rise to diversity of contacts, while diversity of contacts doesn't give rise to diversity of elements." 2.1

SN 14.4

## Diversity of Feelings

*Vedanānānattasutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

- 1.2 “Mendicants, diversity of elements gives rise to diversity of contacts, and diversity of contacts gives rise to diversity of feelings. And what is the diversity of elements? The eye element, ear element, nose element, tongue element, body element, and mind element. This is called the diversity of elements.
- 2.1 And how does diversity of elements give rise to diversity of contacts, and diversity of contacts gives rise to diversity of feelings? The eye element gives rise to eye contact. Eye contact gives rise to the feeling born of eye contact. ... The mind element gives rise to mind contact. Mind contact gives rise to the feeling born of mind contact. That’s how diversity of elements gives rise to diversity of contacts, and diversity of contacts gives rise to diversity of feelings.”

SN 14.5

## Diversity of Feelings (2nd)

*Dutiya vedanānānattasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattḥī.
- 1.2 “Mendicants, diversity of elements gives rise to diversity of contacts. Diversity of contacts gives rise to diversity of feelings. Diversity of feelings doesn’t give rise to diversity of contacts. Diversity of contacts doesn’t give rise to diversity of elements. And what is the diversity of elements? The eye element, ear element, nose element, tongue element, body element, and mind element. This is called the diversity of elements.
- 2.1 And how does diversity of elements give rise to diversity of contacts, and diversity of contacts give rise to diversity of feelings, while diversity of feelings doesn’t give rise to diversity of contacts, and diversity of contacts doesn’t give rise to diversity of elements? The eye element gives rise to eye contact. Eye contact gives rise to feeling born of eye contact. Feeling born of eye contact doesn’t give rise to eye contact. Eye contact doesn’t give rise to the eye element. ... The mind element gives rise to mind contact. Mind contact gives rise to feeling born of mind contact. Feeling born of mind

contact doesn't give rise to mind contact. Mind contact doesn't give rise to the mind element. That's how diversity of elements gives rise to diversity of contacts, and diversity of contacts gives rise to diversity of feelings, while diversity of feelings doesn't give rise to diversity of contacts, and diversity of contacts doesn't give rise to diversity of elements."

SN 14.6

## External Diversity of Elements

*Bāhiradhātunānattasutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

"Mendicants, I will teach you the diversity of elements. And 1.2 what is the diversity of elements? The sight element, the sound element, the smell element, the taste element, the touch element, and the idea element. This is called the diversity of elements."

SN 14.7

## Diversity of Perceptions

*Saññānānattasutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

"Mendicants, diversity of elements gives rise to diversity of 1.2 perceptions. Diversity of perceptions gives rise to diversity of thoughts. Diversity of thoughts gives rise to diversity of desires. Diversity of desires gives rise to diversity of passions. Diversity of passions gives rise to diversity of searches. And what is the diversity of elements? The sight element, the sound element, the smell element, the taste element, the touch element, and the idea element. This is called the diversity of elements.

And how does diversity of elements give rise to diversity of 2.1 perceptions, and diversity of perceptions give rise to diversity of thoughts, and diversity of thoughts give rise to diversity of desires,

and diversity of desires give rise to diversity of passions, and diversity of passions give rise to diversity of searches?

- 3.1 The sight element gives rise to the perception of sights. The perception of sights gives rise to thoughts about sights. Thoughts about sights give rise to the desire for sights. The desire for sights gives rise to the passion for sights. The passion for sights gives rise to searching for sights. ... The idea element gives rise to the perception of ideas. The perception of ideas gives rise to thoughts about ideas. Thoughts about ideas give rise to the desire for ideas. The desire for ideas gives rise to the passion for ideas. The passion for ideas gives rise to searching for ideas.
- 4.1 That's how diversity of elements gives rise to diversity of perceptions, and diversity of perceptions gives rise to diversity of thoughts, and diversity of thoughts gives rise to diversity of desires, and diversity of desires gives rise to diversity of passions, and diversity of passions gives rise to diversity of searches."

SN 14.8

## No Diversity of Searches

*Nopariyesanānānattasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 "Mendicants, diversity of elements gives rise to diversity of perceptions. Diversity of perceptions gives rise to diversity of thoughts. Diversity of thoughts gives rise to diversity of desires. Diversity of desires gives rise to diversity of passions. Diversity of passions gives rise to diversity of searches. Diversity of searches doesn't give rise to diversity of passions. Diversity of passions doesn't give rise to diversity of desires. Diversity of desires doesn't give rise to diversity of thoughts. Diversity of thoughts doesn't give rise to diversity of perceptions. Diversity of perceptions doesn't give rise to diversity of elements. And what is the diversity of elements? The sight element, the sound element, the smell element,



the taste element, the touch element, and the idea element. This is called the diversity of elements.

And how does diversity of elements give rise to diversity of perceptions ... diversity of perceptions doesn't give rise to diversity of elements? 2.1

The sight element gives rise to the perception of sights ... The idea element gives rise to the perception of ideas ... the search for ideas. The search for ideas doesn't give rise to the passion for ideas. The passion for ideas doesn't give rise to the desire for ideas. The desire for ideas doesn't give rise to thoughts about ideas. Thoughts about ideas don't give rise to perceptions of ideas. Perceptions of ideas don't give rise to the idea element. 3.1

That's how diversity of elements gives rise to diversity of perceptions ... diversity of perceptions doesn't give rise to diversity of elements." 4.1

## SN 14.9

### Diversity of Gains

*Bāhiraphassanānattasutta*

At Sāvattthī.

1.1

"Mendicants, diversity of elements gives rise to diversity of perceptions. Diversity of perceptions gives rise to diversity of thoughts. Diversity of thoughts gives rise to diversity of contacts. Diversity of contacts gives rise to diversity of feelings. Diversity of feelings gives rise to diversity of desires. Diversity of desires gives rise to diversity of passions. Diversity of passions gives rise to diversity of searches. Diversity of searches gives rise to diversity of gains. And what is the diversity of elements? The sight element, the sound element, the smell element, the taste element, the touch element, and the idea element. This is called the diversity of elements. 1.2

And how does diversity of elements give rise to diversity of perceptions ... diversity of searches give rise to diversity of gains? 2.1

- 3.1 The sight element gives rise to the perception of sights. The perception of sights gives rise to thoughts about sights. Thoughts about sights give rise to sight contact. Sight contact gives rise to feeling born of sight contact. Feeling born of sight contact gives rise to the desire for sights. The desire for sights gives rise to the passion for sights. The passion for sights gives rise to searching for sights. Searching for sights gives rise to gaining sights ... The idea element gives rise to the perception of ideas. The perception of ideas gives rise to thoughts about ideas. Thoughts about ideas give rise to idea contact. Idea contact gives rise to feeling born of idea contact. Feeling born of idea contact gives rise to the desire for ideas. The desire for ideas gives rise to the passion for ideas. The passion for ideas gives rise to searching for ideas. Searching for ideas gives rise to gaining ideas.
- 4.1 That's how diversity of elements gives rise to diversity of perceptions ... diversity of searches gives rise to diversity of gains."

## SN 14.10

## No Diversity of Gains

*Dutiyaabāhiraphassanānattasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattthī.
- 1.2 "Mendicants, diversity of elements gives rise to diversity of perceptions. Diversity of perceptions gives rise to diversity of thoughts. ... contacts ... feelings ... desires ... passions ... Diversity of searches gives rise to diversity of gains. Diversity of gains doesn't give rise to diversity of searches. Diversity of searches doesn't give rise to diversity of passions. ... desires ... feelings ... contacts ... thoughts ... Diversity of perceptions doesn't give rise to diversity of elements. And what is the diversity of elements? The sight element, the sound element, the smell element, the taste element, the touch element, and the idea element. This is called the diversity of elements.

And how does diversity of elements give rise to diversity of 2.1  
 perceptions, and diversity of perceptions give rise to diversity of  
 thoughts? contacts ... feelings ... desires ... passions ... searches  
 ... gains ... while diversity of gains doesn't give rise to diversity of  
 searches ... passions ... desires ... feelings ... contacts ... thoughts  
 ... perceptions ... elements?

The sight element gives rise to the perception of sights ... The 3.1  
 idea element gives rise to the perception of ideas ... The search for  
 ideas gives rise to gaining ideas. The gaining of ideas doesn't give  
 rise to the search for ideas. The search for ideas doesn't give rise  
 to the passion for ideas. The passion for ideas doesn't give rise to  
 the desire for ideas. The desire for ideas doesn't give rise to feeling  
 born of idea contact. Feeling born of idea contact doesn't give rise  
 to idea contact. Idea contact doesn't give rise to thoughts about  
 ideas. Thoughts about ideas don't give rise to perceptions of ideas.  
 Perceptions of ideas don't give rise to the idea element.

That's how diversity of elements gives rise to diversity of percep- 4.1  
 tions ... diversity of perceptions doesn't give rise to diversity of  
 elements."

# Chapter Two

SN 14.11

## Seven Elements

*Sattadhātusutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

1.2 “Mendicants, there are these seven elements. What seven? The element of light, the element of beauty, the element of the dimension of infinite space, the element of the dimension of infinite consciousness, the element of the dimension of nothingness, the element of the dimension of neither perception nor non-perception, and the element of the cessation of perception and feeling. These are the seven elements.”

2.1 When he said this, one of the mendicants asked the Buddha, “Sir, due to what does each of these elements appear?”

3.1 “Mendicant, the element of light appears due to the element of darkness. The element of beauty appears due to the element of ugliness. The element of the dimension of infinite space appears due to the element of form. The element of the dimension of infinite consciousness appears due to the element of the dimension of infinite space. The element of the dimension of nothingness appears due to the element of the dimension of infinite consciousness. The element of the dimension of neither perception nor non-perception appears due to the element of the dimension of nothingness. The element of the cessation of perception and feeling appears due to the element of cessation.”

“Sir, how is each of these elements to be attained?” 4.1

“The elements of light, beauty, the dimension of infinite space, 5.1  
the dimension of infinite consciousness, and the dimension of  
nothingness are attainments with perception. The element of the  
dimension of neither perception nor non-perception is an attain-  
ment with only a residue of conditioned phenomena. The element  
of the cessation of perception and feeling is an attainment of ces-  
sation.”

SN 14.12

## With a Cause

*Sanidānasutta*

At Sāvattḥī. 1.1

“Mendicants, sensual, malicious, and cruel thoughts arise for a 1.2  
reason, not without reason.

And how do sensual, malicious, and cruel thoughts arise for a 2.1  
reason, not without reason? The element of sensuality gives rise  
to sensual perceptions. Sensual perceptions give rise to sensual  
thoughts. Sensual thoughts give rise to sensual desires. Sensual  
desires give rise to sensual passions. Sensual passions give rise to  
searches for sensual pleasures. An unlearned ordinary person on a  
search for sensual pleasures behaves badly in three ways: by body,  
speech, and mind.

The element of malice gives rise to malicious perceptions. Ma- 3.1  
licious perceptions give rise to malicious thoughts. ... malicious  
desires ... malicious passions ... malicious searches ... An un-  
learned ordinary person on a malicious search behaves badly in  
three ways: by body, speech, and mind.

The element of cruelty gives rise to cruel perceptions. Cruel 4.1  
perceptions give rise to cruel thoughts. ... cruel desires ... cruel  
passions ... cruel searches ... An unlearned ordinary person on  
a cruel search behaves badly in three ways: by body, speech, and  
mind.

- 5.1 Suppose a person was to drop a burning torch in a thicket of dry grass. If they don't quickly extinguish it with their hands and feet, the creatures living in the grass and wood would come to ruin.
- 5.2 In the same way, a corrupt perception might arise in an ascetic or brahmin. If they don't quickly give it up, get rid of it, eliminate it, and obliterate it, they'll suffer in the present life, with distress, anguish, and fever. And when the body breaks up, after death, they can expect to be reborn in a bad place.
- 6.1 Thoughts of renunciation, good will, and harmlessness arise for a reason, not without reason.
- 7.1 And how do thoughts of renunciation, good will, and harmlessness arise for a reason, not without reason? The element of renunciation gives rise to perceptions of renunciation. Perceptions of renunciation give rise to thoughts of renunciation. Thoughts of renunciation give rise to enthusiasm for renunciation. Enthusiasm for renunciation gives rise to fervor for renunciation. Fervor for renunciation gives rise to the search for renunciation. A learned noble disciple on a search for renunciation behaves well in three ways: by body, speech, and mind.
- 8.1 The element of good will gives rise to perceptions of good will. Perceptions of good will give rise to thoughts of good will. ... enthusiasm for good will ... fervor for good will ... the search for good will. A learned noble disciple on a search for good will behaves well in three ways: by body, speech, and mind.
- 9.1 The element of harmlessness gives rise to perceptions of harmlessness. Perceptions of harmlessness give rise to thoughts of harmlessness. ... enthusiasm for harmlessness ... fervor for harmlessness ... the search for harmlessness. A learned noble disciple on a search for harmlessness behaves well in three ways: by body, speech, and mind.
- 10.1 Suppose a person was to drop a burning torch in a thicket of dry grass. If they were to quickly extinguish it with their hands and feet, the creatures living in the grass and wood wouldn't come to ruin.

In the same way, a corrupt perception might arise in an ascetic 10.2  
or brahmin. If they quickly give it up, get rid of it, eliminate it, and  
obliterate it, they'll be happy in the present life, free of distress,  
anguish, and fever. And when the body breaks up, after death, they  
can expect to be reborn in a good place."

SN 14.13

## In the Brick Hall

*Gīṇjakāvasathasutta*

At one time the Buddha was staying at Nātika in the brick house. 1.1  
There the Buddha addressed the mendicants, "Mendicants!"

"Venerable sir," they replied. The Buddha said this: 1.4

"Mendicants, an element gives rise to a perception, a view, and 2.1  
a thought."

When he said this, Venerable Kaccāna said to the Buddha, "Sir, 2.2  
regarding those who are not fully awakened Buddhas, there is a  
view that they are in fact fully awakened Buddhas. Due to what  
does this view appear?"

"It's a mighty thing, Kaccāna, the element of ignorance. An 3.1  
inferior element gives rise to inferior perceptions, inferior views,  
inferior thoughts, inferior intentions, inferior aims, inferior wishes,  
an inferior person, and inferior speech. One explains, teaches,  
asserts, establishes, clarifies, analyzes, and reveals the inferior. I say  
that their rebirth is inferior.

A middling element gives rise to middling perceptions, middling 4.1  
views, middling thoughts, middling intentions, middling aims,  
middling wishes, a middling person, and middling speech. One  
explains, teaches, asserts, establishes, clarifies, analyzes, and reveals  
the middling. I say that their rebirth is middling.

A superior element gives rise to superior perceptions, superior 5.1  
views, superior thoughts, superior intentions, superior aims, supe-  
rior wishes, a superior person, and superior speech. One explains,

teaches, asserts, establishes, clarifies, analyzes, and reveals the superior. I say that their rebirth is superior.”

SN 14.14

## Bad Convictions

*Hīnādhimuttikasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattḥī.
- 1.2 “Mendicants, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element. Those who have bad convictions come together and converge with those who have bad convictions. Those who have good convictions come together and converge with those who have good convictions.
- 2.1 In the past, too, sentient beings came together and converged because of an element. ...
- 3.1 In the future, too, sentient beings will come together and converge because of an element. ...
- 4.1 At present, too, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element. Those who have bad convictions come together and converge with those who have bad convictions. Those who have good convictions come together and converge with those who have good convictions.”

SN 14.15

## Walking Together

*Caṅkamasutta*

- 1.1 At one time the Buddha was staying near Rājagaha, on the Vulture’s Peak Mountain. Now at that time Venerable Sāriputta was walking together with several mendicants not far from the Buddha. Venerable Mahāmoggallāna was doing likewise, as were Venerable Mahākassapa, Venerable Anuruddha, Venerable Puṇṇa son of Maṇṭāṇī, Venerable Upāli, Venerable Ānanda, and Devadatta.



Then the Buddha said to the mendicants, “Mendicants, do you see Sāriputta walking together with several mendicants?” 2.1

“Yes, sir.” 2.3

“All of those mendicants have great wisdom. Do you see Moggallāna walking together with several mendicants?” 2.4

“Yes, sir.” 2.6

“All of those mendicants have great psychic power. Do you see Kassapa walking together with several mendicants?” 2.7

“Yes, sir.” 2.9

“All of those mendicants advocate austerities. Do you see Anuruddha walking together with several mendicants?” 2.10

“Yes, sir.” 2.12

“All of those mendicants have clairvoyance. Do you see Puṇṇa son of Mantāṇi walking together with several mendicants?” 2.13

“Yes, sir.” 2.15

“All of those mendicants are Dhamma speakers. Do you see Upāli walking together with several mendicants?” 2.16

“Yes, sir.” 2.18

“All of those mendicants are experts in monastic law. Do you see Ānanda walking together with several mendicants?” 2.19

“Yes, sir.” 2.21

“All of those mendicants are very learned. Do you see Devadatta walking together with several mendicants?” 2.22

“Yes, sir.” 2.24

“All of those mendicants have corrupt wishes.” 2.25

Sentient beings come together and converge because of an element. Those who have bad convictions come together and converge with those who have bad convictions. Those who have good convictions come together and converge with those who have good convictions. 3.1

In the past, in the future, and also in the present, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element. Those who have bad convictions come together and converge with those who 3.4

have bad convictions. Those who have good convictions come together and converge with those who have good convictions.”

SN 14.16

## With Verses

*Sagāthāsutta*

1.1 At Sāvattḥī.

1.2 “Mendicants, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element. Those who have bad convictions come together and converge with those who have bad convictions. In the past ...

2.1 In the future ...

3.1 At present, too, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element. Those who have bad convictions come together and converge with those who have bad convictions.

4.1 It’s like how dung comes together with dung, urine with urine, spit with spit, pus with pus, and blood with blood. In the same way, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element. Those who have bad convictions come together and converge with those who have bad convictions. In the past ... In the future ... At present, too, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element. Those who have bad convictions come together and converge with those who have bad convictions.

5.1 Sentient beings come together and converge because of an element. Those who have good convictions come together and converge with those who have good convictions. In the past ...

6.1 In the future ... At present, too, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element. Those who have good convictions come together and converge with those who have good convictions.

7.1 It’s like how milk comes together with milk, oil with oil, ghee with ghee, honey with honey, and molasses with molasses. In the same way, sentient beings come together and converge because

of an element. Those who have good convictions come together and converge with those who have good convictions. In the past ... In the future ... At present, too, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element. Those who have good convictions come together and converge with those who have good convictions.”

That is what the Buddha said. Then the Holy One, the Teacher, 8.1  
went on to say:

“Socializing promotes entanglement; 9.1  
they’re cut off by being aloof.  
If you’re lost in the middle of a great sea,  
and you clamber up on a little log, you’ll sink.

So too, a person who lives well 10.1  
sinks by relying on a lazy person.  
Hence you should avoid such  
a lazy person who lacks energy.

Dwell with the noble ones 11.1  
who are secluded and determined  
and always energetic;  
the astute who practice absorption.”

SN 14.17

## Faithless

*Assaddhasamsandanasutta*

At Sāvattḥī. 1.1

“Mendicants, sentient beings come together and converge be- 1.2  
cause of an element: the faithless with the faithless, the unconsci-  
entious with the unconscientious, the imprudent with the impru-  
dent, the unlearned with the unlearned, the lazy with the lazy, the  
unmindful with the unmindful, and the witless with the witless.

- 2.1 In the past, too, sentient beings came together and converged because of an element. ...
- 3.1 In the future, too, sentient beings will come together and converge because of an element. ...
- 4.1 At present, too, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element. ...
- 5.1 Sentient beings come together and converge because of an element: the faithful with the faithful, the conscientious with the conscientious, the prudent with the prudent, the learned with the learned, the energetic with the energetic, the mindful with the mindful, and the wise with the wise. In the past ... In the future ... At present, too, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element. ...”

SN 14.18

## Beginning With the Faithless

*Assaddhamūlakasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 “Mendicants, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element: the faithless with the faithless, the unconscientious with the unconscientious, the witless with the witless, the faithful with the faithful, the conscientious with the conscientious, and the wise with the wise. In the past ... In the future ...
- 2.1 At present, too, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element. ...
- 3.1 Sentient beings come together and converge because of an element: the faithless with the faithless, the imprudent with the imprudent, the witless with the witless, the faithful with the faithful, the prudent with the prudent, and the wise with the wise.  
(*The following should be told in full like the first section.*)
- 4.1 Sentient beings come together because of an element: the faithless ... unlearned ... witless ... the faithful ...

Sentient beings come together because of an element: the faith- 5.1  
less ... lazy ... witless. the faithful ... energetic ... wise.

Sentient beings come together because of an element: the faith- 6.1  
less ... unmindful ... witless. the faithful ... mindful ... wise.”

SN 14.19

## Beginning With the Shameless

*Ahrikamūlakasutta*

At Sāvattḥī. 1.1

“Mendicants, sentient beings come together and converge be- 1.2  
cause of an element: the unconscientious with the unconscientious  
... imprudent ... witless. The conscientious with the conscientious  
... prudent ... wise.

... shameless ... unlearned ... witless. The conscientious with 2.1  
the conscientious ... learned ... wise.

... shameless ... lazy ... witless. The conscientious with the 3.1  
conscientious ... energetic ... wise.

... shameless ... unmindful ... witless. The conscientious with 4.1  
the conscientious ... mindful ... wise.”

SN 14.20

## Beginning With Imprudence

*Anottappamūlakasutta*

At Sāvattḥī. 1.1

“Mendicants, sentient beings come together and converge be- 1.2  
cause of an element: the imprudent with the imprudent ... un-  
learned ... witless. The prudent with the prudent ... learned ...  
wise.

... the imprudent with the imprudent ... lazy ... witless. The 2.1  
prudent with the prudent ... energetic ... wise.

- 3.1 ... the imprudent with the imprudent ... unmindful ... witless.  
The prudent with the prudent ... mindful ... wise.”

SN 14.21

## Beginning With the Unlearned

*Appassutamūlakasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.  
1.2 “Mendicants, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element: the unlearned with the unlearned ... lazy ... witless. The learned with the learned ... energetic ... wise.  
2.1 ... the unlearned with the unlearned ... unmindful ... witless.  
The learned with the learned ... mindful ... wise.”

SN 14.22

## Beginning With the Lazy

*Kusītamūlakasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.  
1.2 “Mendicants, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element: the lazy with the lazy ... unmindful ... witless ... energetic ... mindful ... wise ...”  
(*Tell all in full for the past, future, and present.*)

# The Chapter on Ways of Performing Deeds

SN 14.23

## Lacking Immersion

*Asamāhitasutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

“Mendicants, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element: the faithless with the faithless ... shameless ... imprudent ... lacking immersion ... witless ... 1.2

The faithful with the faithful ... conscientious ... prudent ... 2.1  
possessing immersion ... and the wise with the wise.”

SN 14.24

## Unethical

*Dussīlasutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

“Mendicants, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element: the faithless with the faithless ... shameless ... imprudent ... unethical ... witless ... 1.2

The faithful with the faithful ... conscientious ... prudent ... 2.1  
ethical ... and the wise with the wise.”

SN 14.25

## The Five Precepts

*Pañcasikkhāpadasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 “Mendicants, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element: those who kill living creatures with those who kill living creatures, those who steal ... commit sexual misconduct ... lie ... consume beer, wine, and liquor intoxicants ...
- 2.1 Those who refrain from killing living creatures ... who refrain from stealing ... who refrain from sexual misconduct ... who refrain from lying ... those who refrain from consuming beer, wine, and liquor intoxicants with those who refrain from consuming beer, wine, and liquor intoxicants.”

SN 14.26

## Seven Ways of Performing Deeds

*Sattakammapathasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 “Mendicants, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element: those who kill living creatures with those who kill living creatures, those who steal ... commit sexual misconduct ... lie ... speak divisively ... speak harshly ... talk nonsense ...
- 2.1 Those who refrain from killing living creatures. ... who refrain from stealing ... who refrain from sexual misconduct ... who refrain from lying ... who refrain from divisive speech ... who refrain from harsh speech ... who refrain from talking nonsense with those who refrain from talking nonsense.”



SN 14.27

## Ten Ways of Performing Deeds

*Dasakammapathasutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

“Mendicants, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element: those who kill living creatures with those who kill living creatures, those who steal ... commit sexual misconduct ... lie ... speak divisively ... speak harshly ... talk nonsense ... are covetous ... are malicious ... have wrong view ...”

1.2

Those who refrain from killing living creatures ... who refrain from stealing ... who refrain from sexual misconduct ... who refrain from lying ... who refrain from divisive speech ... who refrain from harsh speech ... who refrain from talking nonsense ... are not covetous ... are not malicious ... have right view with those who have right view.”

2.1

SN 14.28

## The Eightfold Path

*Aṭṭhaṅgikasutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

“Mendicants, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element: those of wrong view with those of wrong view ... wrong thought ... wrong speech ... wrong action ... wrong livelihood ... wrong effort ... wrong mindfulness ... wrong immersion ...”

1.2

Those who have right view ... right thought ... right speech ... right action ... right livelihood ... right effort ... right mindfulness ... right immersion with those who have right immersion.”

2.1

SN 14.29

## Ten Factored Path

*Dasaṅgasutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

1.2 “Mendicants, sentient beings come together and converge because of an element: those of wrong view with those of wrong view ... wrong thought ... wrong speech ... wrong action ... wrong livelihood ... wrong effort ... wrong mindfulness ... wrong immersion ... wrong knowledge ... wrong freedom ...

2.1 Those who have right view ... right thought ... right speech ... right action ... right livelihood ... right effort ... right mindfulness ... right immersion ... right knowledge ... right freedom with those who have right freedom.”

*(Tell all in full for the past, future, and present.)*

# Chapter Four

SN 14.30

## Four Elements

*Catudhātusutta*

At one time the Buddha was staying near Sāvattthī in Jeta’s Grove, 1.1  
Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. ... “Mendicants, there are these four  
elements. What four? The elements of earth, water, fire, and air.  
These are the four elements.”

SN 14.31

## Before Awakening

*Pubbесambodhasutta*

At Sāvattthī. 1.1

“Mendicants, before my awakening—when I was still unawakened but intent on awakening—I thought: ‘What’s the gratification, the drawback, and the escape when it comes to the earth element ... the water element ... the fire element ... and the air element?’ 1.2

Then it occurred to me: ‘The pleasure and happiness that arise 2.1  
from the earth element: this is its gratification. That the earth  
element is impermanent, suffering, and perishable: this is its drawback. Removing and giving up desire and greed for the earth element: this is its escape. The pleasure and happiness that arise

from the water element ... The pleasure and happiness that arise from the fire element ... The pleasure and happiness that arise from the air element: this is its gratification. That the air element is impermanent, suffering, and perishable: this is its drawback. Removing and giving up desire and greed for the air element: this is its escape.'

3.1 As long as I didn't truly understand these four elements' gratification, drawback, and escape in this way for what they are, I didn't announce my supreme perfect awakening in this world with its gods, Māras, and Divinities, this population with its ascetics and brahmins, its gods and humans.

4.1 But when I did truly understand these four elements' gratification, drawback, and escape in this way for what they are, I announced my supreme perfect awakening in this world with its gods, Māras, and Divinities, this population with its ascetics and brahmins, its gods and humans.

4.2 Knowledge and vision arose in me: 'My freedom is unshakable; this is my last rebirth; now there'll be no more future lives.'

SN 14.32

## In Search of Gratification

*Acarimsutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

1.2 "Mendicants, I went in search of the earth element's gratification, and I found it. I've seen clearly with wisdom the full extent of gratification in the earth element. I went in search of the earth element's drawback, and I found it. I've seen clearly with wisdom the full extent of the drawback in the earth element. I went in search of escape from the earth element, and I found it. I've seen clearly with wisdom the full extent of escape from the earth element.

2.1 I went in search of the water element's gratification ... I went in search of the fire element's gratification ... I went in search of the air element's gratification ...

As long as I didn't truly understand these four elements' gratification, drawback, and escape for what they are, I didn't announce my supreme perfect awakening in this world with its gods, Māras, and Divinities, this population with its ascetics and brahmins, its gods and humans. 3.1

But when I did truly understand the four elements' gratification, drawback, and escape for what they are, I announced my supreme perfect awakening in this world with its gods, Māras, and Divinities, this population with its ascetics and brahmins, its gods and humans. 4.1

Knowledge and vision arose in me: 'My freedom is unshakable; this is my last rebirth; now there'll be no more future lives.' 4.2

SN 14.33

## If There Was No

*Nocedamsutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

"Mendicants, if there were no gratification in the earth element, sentient beings wouldn't be aroused by it. But since there is gratification in the earth element, sentient beings are aroused by it. If the earth element had no drawback, sentient beings wouldn't grow disillusioned with it. But since the earth element has a drawback, sentient beings do grow disillusioned with it. If there were no escape from the earth element, sentient beings wouldn't escape from it. But since there is an escape from the earth element, sentient beings do escape from it. 1.2

If there were no gratification in the water element ... If there were no gratification in the fire element ... If there were no gratification in the air element ... 2.1

As long as sentient beings don't truly understand these four elements' gratification, drawback, and escape for what they are, they haven't escaped from this world—with its gods, Māras, and Divinities, this population with its ascetics and brahmins, its gods 3.1

and humans—and they don’t live detached, liberated, with a mind free of limits.

- 4.1 But when sentient beings truly understand these four elements’ gratification, drawback, and escape for what they are, they’ve escaped from this world—with its gods, Māras, and Divinities, this population with its ascetics and brahmins, its gods and humans—and they live detached, liberated, with a mind free of limits.”

SN 14.34

## Exclusively Painful

*Ekantadukkhassutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.

- 1.2 “Mendicants, if the earth element were exclusively painful—soaked and steeped in pain and not steeped in pleasure—sentient beings wouldn’t be aroused by it. But because the earth element is pleasurable—soaked and steeped in pleasure and not steeped in pain—sentient beings are aroused by it.

- 2.1 If the water element ... If the fire element ... If the air element ...

- 3.1 If the earth element was perfectly pleasurable—soaked and steeped in pleasure and not steeped in pain—sentient beings wouldn’t grow disillusioned with it. But because the earth element is painful—soaked and steeped in pain and not steeped in pleasure—sentient beings do grow disillusioned with it.

- 4.1 If the water element ... If the fire element ... If the air element was perfectly pleasurable—soaked and steeped in pleasure and not steeped in pain—sentient beings wouldn’t grow disillusioned with it. But because the air element is painful—soaked and steeped in pain and not steeped in pleasure—sentient beings do grow disillusioned with it.”

SN 14.35

## Taking Pleasure

*Abhinandasutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

“Mendicants, if you take pleasure in the earth element, you take 1.2  
pleasure in suffering. If you take pleasure in suffering, I say you’re  
not exempt from suffering. If you take pleasure in the water element  
... If you take pleasure in the fire element ... If you take pleasure in  
the air element, you take pleasure in suffering. If you take pleasure  
in suffering, I say you’re not exempt from suffering.

If you don’t take pleasure in the earth element, you don’t take 2.1  
pleasure in suffering. If you don’t take pleasure in suffering, I say  
you’re exempt from suffering. If you don’t take pleasure in the  
water element ... If you don’t take pleasure in the fire element ... If  
you don’t take pleasure in the air element, you don’t take pleasure  
in suffering. If you don’t take pleasure in suffering, I say you’re  
exempt from suffering.”

SN 14.36

## Arising

*Uppādasutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

“Mendicants, the arising, continuation, rebirth, and manifes- 1.2  
tation of the earth element is the arising of suffering, the continua-  
tion of diseases, and the manifestation of old age and death. The  
arising, continuation, rebirth, and manifestation of the water ele-  
ment ... The arising, continuation, rebirth, and manifestation of  
the fire element ... The arising, continuation, rebirth, and manifes-  
tation of the air element is the arising of suffering, the continuation  
of diseases, and the manifestation of old age and death.

- 2.1 The cessation, settling, and ending of the earth element is the cessation of suffering, the settling of diseases, and the ending of old age and death. The cessation, settling, and ending of the water element ... The cessation, settling, and ending of the fire element ... The cessation, settling, and ending of the air element is the cessation of suffering, the settling of diseases, and the ending of old age and death.”

SN 14.37

## Ascetics and Brahmins

*Samaṇabrāhmaṇasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 “Mendicants, there are these four elements. What four? The elements of earth, water, fire, and air. There are ascetics and brahmins who don’t truly understand these four elements’ gratification, drawback, and escape. I don’t deem them as true ascetics and brahmins. Those venerables don’t realize the goal of life as an ascetic or brahmin, and don’t live having realized it with their own insight.
- 2.1 There are ascetics and brahmins who do truly understand these four elements’ gratification, drawback, and escape. I deem them as true ascetics and brahmins. Those venerables realize the goal of life as an ascetic or brahmin, and live having realized it with their own insight.”

SN 14.38

## Ascetics and Brahmins (2nd)

*Dutiyasamaṇabrāhmaṇasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 “Mendicants, there are these four elements. What four? The elements of earth, water, fire, and air. There are ascetics and brahmins



who don't truly understand these four elements' origin, ending, gratification, drawback, and escape ...

*(Tell all in full.)*

There are ascetics and brahmins who do truly understand these four elements' origin, ending, gratification, drawback, and escape ...”

SN 14.39

## Ascetics and Brahmins (3rd)

*Tatīyasamaṇabrāhmaṇasutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

“Mendicants, there are ascetics and brahmins who don't understand the earth element, its origin, its cessation, and the practice that leads to its cessation. They don't understand the water element ... fire element ... air element ... Those venerables don't realize the goal of life as an ascetic or brahmin, and don't live having realized it with their own insight.

1.2

There are ascetics and brahmins who do understand the earth element, its origin, its cessation, and the practice that leads to its cessation. They do understand the water element ... the fire element ... the air element ... Those venerables realize the goal of life as an ascetic or brahmin, and live having realized it with their own insight.”

2.1

**The Linked Discourses on the elements are complete.**

LINKED DISCOURSES ON  
THE UNKNOWABLE  
BEGINNING

# Chapter One

SN 15.1

## Grass and Sticks

*Tiṇakaṭṭhasutta*

SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near 1.1  
Sāvatthī in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. There the  
Buddha addressed the mendicants, “Mendicants!”

“Venerable sir,” they replied. The Buddha said this: 1.5

“Mendicants, transmigration has no known beginning. No first 1.7  
point is found of sentient beings roaming and transmigrating,  
shrouded by ignorance and fettered by craving. Suppose a per-  
son was to strip all the grass, sticks, branches, and leaves in the  
Black Plum Tree Land, gather them together into one pile, and  
chop them each into four inch pieces. They’d lay them down, say-  
ing: ‘This is my mother, this is my grandmother.’ The grass, sticks,  
branches, and leaves of the Black Plum Tree Land would run out  
before that person’s mothers and grandmothers.

Why is that? Transmigration has no known beginning. No 1.11  
first point is found of sentient beings roaming and transmigrating,  
shrouded by ignorance and fettered by craving. For such a long  
time you have undergone suffering, agony, and disaster, swelling  
the cemeteries. This is quite enough for you to become disillusioned,  
dispassionate, and freed regarding all conditions.”

## SN 15.2

## The Earth

*Pathavīsutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

1.2 “Mendicants, transmigration has no known beginning. No first point is found of sentient beings roaming and transmigrating, shrouded by ignorance and fettered by craving. Suppose a person was to make the whole earth into clay balls the size of jujube seeds. They’d lay them down, saying: ‘This is my father, this is my grandfather.’ The whole earth would run out before that person’s fathers and grandfathers.

1.6 Why is that? Transmigration has no known beginning. No first point is found of sentient beings roaming and transmigrating, shrouded by ignorance and fettered by craving. For such a long time you have undergone suffering, agony, and disaster, swelling the cemeteries. This is quite enough for you to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed regarding all conditions.”

## SN 15.3

## Tears

*Assusutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

1.2 “Mendicants, transmigration has no known beginning. No first point is found of sentient beings roaming and transmigrating, shrouded by ignorance and fettered by craving. What do you think? Which is more: the flow of tears you’ve shed while roaming and transmigrating for such a very long time—weeping and wailing from being united with the unloved and separated from the loved—or the water in the four oceans?”

“As we understand the Buddha’s teaching, the flow of tears we’ve shed while roaming and transmigrating is more than the water in the four oceans.” 1.5

“Good, good, mendicants! It’s good that you understand my teaching like this. The flow of tears you’ve shed while roaming and transmigrating is indeed more than the water in the four oceans. For a long time you’ve undergone the death of a mother ... father ... brother ... sister ... son ... daughter ... loss of relatives ... loss of wealth ... or loss through illness. From being united with the unloved and separated from the loved, the flow of tears you’ve shed while roaming and transmigrating is indeed more than the water in the four oceans.” 2.1

Why is that? Transmigration has no known beginning. ... This is quite enough for you to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed regarding all conditions.” 2.13

SN 15.4

## Mother’s Milk

*Khīrasutta*

At Sāvattthī. 1.1

“Mendicants, transmigration has no known beginning. No first point is found of sentient beings roaming and transmigrating, shrouded by ignorance and fettered by craving.” 1.2

What do you think? Which is more: the mother’s milk you’ve drunk while roaming and transmigrating for such a very long time, or the water in the four oceans?” 1.4

“As we understand the Buddha’s teaching, the mother’s milk we’ve drunk while roaming and transmigrating is more than the water in the four oceans.” 1.5

“Good, good, mendicants! It’s good that you understand my teaching like this. The mother’s milk you’ve drunk while roaming and transmigrating for such a very long time is more than the water in the four oceans.” 2.1

- 2.3 Why is that? Transmigration has no known beginning. ... This is quite enough for you to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed regarding all conditions.”

## SN 15.5

## A Mountain

*Pabbatasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattthī.
- 1.2 Then a mendicant went up to the Buddha, bowed, sat down to one side, and asked him, “Sir, how long is an eon?”
- 1.4 “Mendicant, an eon is long. It’s not easy to calculate how many years, how many hundreds or thousands or hundreds of thousands of years it lasts.”
- 2.1 “But sir, is it possible to give a simile?”
- 2.2 “It’s possible,” said the Buddha.
- 2.3 “Suppose there was a huge stone mountain, a league long, a league wide, and a league high, with no cracks or holes, one solid mass. And as each century passed someone would stroke it once with a fine cloth from Kāsi. By this means the huge stone mountain would be worn away before the eon comes to an end. That’s how long an eon is. And we’ve transmigrated through many such eons, many hundreds, many thousands, many hundreds of thousands.
- 2.8 Why is that? Transmigration has no known beginning. ... This is quite enough for you to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed regarding all conditions.”

## SN 15.6

## A Mustard Seed

*Sāsapasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattthī.

Then a mendicant went up to the Buddha ... and asked him, 1.2  
 “Sir, how long is an eon?”

“Mendicant, an eon is long. It’s not easy to calculate how many 1.4  
 years, how many hundreds or thousands or hundreds of thousands  
 of years it lasts.”

“But sir, is it possible to give a simile?” 2.1

“It’s possible,” said the Buddha. 2.2

“Suppose there was an iron city, a league long, a league wide, 2.3  
 and a league high, full of mustard seeds pressed into balls. And  
 as each century passed someone would remove a single mustard  
 seed. By this means the huge heap of mustard seeds would be used  
 up before the eon comes to an end. That’s how long an eon is. And  
 we’ve transmigrated through many such eons, many hundreds,  
 many thousands, many hundreds of thousands.

Why is that? Transmigration has no known beginning. ... This 2.8  
 is quite enough for you to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and  
 freed regarding all conditions.”

## SN 15.7

### Disciples

#### *Sāvakasutta*

At Sāvattṭhi. 1.1

Then several mendicants went up to the Buddha ... and asked 1.2  
 him, “Sir, how many eons have passed?”

“Mendicants, many eons have passed. It’s not easy to calculate 1.4  
 how many eons have passed, how many hundreds or thousands or  
 hundreds of thousands of eons.”

“But sir, is it possible to give a simile?” 2.1

“It’s possible,” said the Buddha. 2.2

“Suppose there were four disciples with a lifespan of a hundred 2.3  
 years. And each day they would each recollect a hundred thousand  
 eons. Those four disciples would pass away after a hundred years  
 and there would still be eons that they haven’t recollected. That’s

how many eons have passed. It's not easy to calculate how many eons have passed, how many hundreds or thousands or hundreds of thousands of eons.

- 2.9 Why is that? Transmigration has no known beginning. ... This is quite enough for you to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed regarding all conditions.”

SN 15.8

## The Ganges

*Gaṅgāsutta*

- 1.1 Near Rājagaha, in the Bamboo Grove. Then a certain brahmin went up to the Buddha, and exchanged greetings with him.

- 1.3 When the greetings and polite conversation were over, he sat down to one side and asked the Buddha, “Mister Gotama, how many eons have passed?”

- 1.5 “Brahmin, many eons have passed. It's not easy to calculate how many eons have passed, how many hundreds or thousands or hundreds of thousands of eons.”

- 2.1 “But Mister Gotama, can you give a simile?”

- 2.2 “I can,” said the Buddha.

- 2.3 “Consider the Ganges river from where it originates to where it meets the ocean. Between these places it's not easy to calculate how many grains of sand there are, how many hundreds or thousands or hundreds of thousands of grains of sand. The eons that have passed are more than this. It's not easy to calculate how many eons have passed, how many hundreds or thousands or hundreds of thousands of eons.

- 2.8 Why is that? Transmigration has no known beginning. No first point is found of sentient beings roaming and transmigrating, shrouded by ignorance and fettered by craving. For such a long time you have undergone suffering, agony, and disaster, swelling the cemeteries. This is quite enough for you to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed regarding all conditions.”



When he said this, the brahmin said to the Buddha, “Excellent, 3.1  
 Mister Gotama! Excellent! ... From this day forth, may Mister  
 Gotama remember me as a lay follower who has gone for refuge  
 for life.”

SN 15.9

## A Stick

*Daṇḍasutta*

At Sāvattthī. 1.1

“Mendicants, transmigration has no known beginning. No first 1.2  
 point is found of sentient beings roaming and transmigrating,  
 shrouded by ignorance and fettered by craving. Suppose a stick  
 was tossed up in the air. Sometimes it’d fall on its bottom, some-  
 times the middle, and sometimes the end. It’s the same for sentient  
 beings roaming and transmigrating, shrouded by ignorance and  
 fettered by craving. Sometimes they go from this world to the  
 other world, and sometimes they come from the other world to  
 this world.

Why is that? Transmigration has no known beginning. ... This 1.6  
 is quite enough for you to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and  
 freed regarding all conditions.”

SN 15.10

## A Single Person

*Puggalasutta*

At one time the Buddha was staying near Rājagaha, on the Vulture’s 1.1  
 Peak Mountain. There the Buddha addressed the mendicants,  
 “Mendicants!”

“Venerable sir,” they replied. The Buddha said this: 1.4

“Mendicants, transmigration has no known beginning. ... One 2.1  
 person roaming and transmigrating for an eon would amass a heap

of bones the size of this Mount Vepulla, if they were gathered together and not lost.

2.3 Why is that? Transmigration has no known beginning. ... This is quite enough for you to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed regarding all conditions.”

3.1 That is what the Buddha said. Then the Holy One, the Teacher, went on to say:

4.1 “If the bones of a single person  
for a single eon were gathered up,  
they’d make a pile the size of a mountain:  
so said the great seer.

5.1 And this is declared to be  
as huge as Mount Vepulla,  
higher than the Vulture’s Peak  
in the Magadhan mountain range.

6.1 But then, with right understanding,  
a person sees the noble truths—  
suffering, suffering’s origin,  
suffering’s transcendence,  
and the noble eightfold path  
that leads to the stilling of suffering.

7.1 After roaming on seven times at most,  
that person  
makes an end of suffering,  
with the ending of all fetters.”

# Chapter Two

SN 15.11

## In a Sorry State

*Duggatasutta*

At one time the Buddha was staying near Sāvattthī. 1.1

“Mendicants, transmigration has no known beginning. No first 1.3  
point is found of sentient beings roaming and transmigrating,  
shrouded by ignorance and fettered by craving. When you see  
someone in a sorry state, in distress, you should conclude: ‘In all  
this long time, we too have undergone the same thing.’ Why is  
that? Transmigration has no known beginning. ... This is quite  
enough for you to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed  
regarding all conditions.”

SN 15.12

## In a Good Way

*Sukhitasutta*

At Sāvattthī. 1.1

“Mendicants, transmigration has no known beginning. ... 1.2  
When you see someone in a good way, in a happy state, you should  
conclude: ‘In all this long time, we too have undergone the same  
thing.’

- 1.5 Why is that? Transmigration has no known beginning. ... This is quite enough for you to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed regarding all conditions.”

SN 15.13

## Thirty Mendicants

*Tīmsamattasutta*

- 1.1 Near Rājagaha, in the Bamboo Grove. Then thirty mendicants from Pāvā went to the Buddha. All of them lived in the wilderness, ate only almsfood, wore rag robes, and owned just three robes; yet they all still had fetters. They bowed to the Buddha and sat down to one side.
- 1.3 Then it occurred to the Buddha, “These thirty mendicants from Pāvā live in the wilderness, eat only almsfood, wear rag robes, and own just three robes; yet they all still have fetters. Why don’t I teach them the Dhamma in such a way that their minds are freed from defilements by not grasping while sitting in this very seat?”
- 1.6 Then the Buddha said to the mendicants, “Mendicants!”
- 1.8 “Venerable sir,” they replied. The Buddha said this:
- 2.1 “Mendicants, transmigration has no known beginning. No first point is found of sentient beings roaming and transmigrating, shrouded by ignorance and fettered by craving.
- 2.3 What do you think? Which is more: the flow of blood you’ve shed when your head was chopped off while roaming and transmigrating for such a very long time, or the water in the four oceans?”
- 2.4 “As we understand the Buddha’s teaching, the flow of blood we’ve shed when our head was chopped off while roaming and transmigrating is more than the water in the four oceans.”
- 3.1 “Good, good, mendicants! It’s good that you understand my teaching like this. The flow of blood you’ve shed when your head was chopped off while roaming and transmigrating is indeed more than the water in the four oceans. For a long time you’ve been cows, and the flow of blood you’ve shed when your head was chopped off

as a cow is more than the water in the four oceans. For a long time you've been buffalo ... rams ... goats ... deer ... chickens ... pigs ... For a long time you've been bandits, arrested for raiding villages, highway robbery, or adultery. And the flow of blood you've shed when your head was chopped off as a bandit is more than the water in the four oceans.

Why is that? Transmigration has no known beginning. ... This is quite enough for you to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed regarding all conditions.” 3.13

That is what the Buddha said. Satisfied, the mendicants approved what the Buddha said. And while this discourse was being spoken, the minds of the thirty mendicants from Pāvā were freed from defilements by not grasping. 4.1

SN 15.14

## Mother

*Mātusutta*

At Sāvatthī. 1.1

“Mendicants, transmigration has no known beginning. ... It's not easy to find a sentient being who in all this long time has not previously been your mother. 1.2

Why is that? Transmigration has no known beginning. ... This is quite enough for you to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed regarding all conditions.” 1.4

SN 15.15

## Father

*Pitusutta*

At Sāvatthī. 1.1

“Mendicants, transmigration has no known beginning. ... It's not easy to find a sentient being who in all this long time has not 1.2

previously been your father. ... This is quite enough for you to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed regarding all conditions.”

SN 15.16

## Brother

*Bhātusutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

1.2 “It’s not easy to find a sentient being who in all this long time has not previously been your brother. ... This is quite enough for you to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed regarding all conditions.”

SN 15.17

## Sister

*Bhāginisutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

1.2 “It’s not easy to find a sentient being who in all this long time has not previously been your sister. ... This is quite enough for you to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed regarding all conditions.”

SN 15.18

## Son

*Puttasutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

1.2 “It’s not easy to find a sentient being who in all this long time has not previously been your son. ... This is quite enough for

you to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed regarding all conditions.”

SN 15.19

## Daughter

*Dhītusutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

“Mendicants, transmigration has no known beginning. No first point is found of sentient beings roaming and transmigrating, shrouded by ignorance and fettered by craving. It’s not easy to find a sentient being who in all this long time has not previously been your daughter. 1.2

Why is that? Transmigration has no known beginning. No first point is found of sentient beings roaming and transmigrating, shrouded by ignorance and fettered by craving. For such a long time you have undergone suffering, agony, and disaster, swelling the cemeteries. This is quite enough for you to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed regarding all conditions.” 1.5

SN 15.20

## Mount Vepulla

*Vepullapabbatasutta*

At one time the Buddha was staying near Rājagaha, on the Vulture’s Peak Mountain. There the Buddha addressed the mendicants, “Mendicants!” 1.1

“Venerable sir,” they replied. The Buddha said this: 1.4

“Mendicants, transmigration has no known beginning. No first point is found of sentient beings roaming and transmigrating, shrouded by ignorance and fettered by craving. Once upon a time, mendicants, this Mount Vepulla was known as Pācīnavamsa. And at that time people were known as Tivaras. The lifespan of the 2.1

Tivaras was 40,000 years. It took them four days to climb Mount Vepulla, and four days to descend. At that time Kakusandha, the Blessed One, the perfected one, the fully awakened Buddha arose in the world. Kakusandha had a fine pair of chief disciples named Vidhura and Sañjīva. See, mendicants! This mountain's name has vanished, those people have passed away, and that Buddha has become fully quenched. So impermanent are conditions, so unstable are conditions, so unreliable are conditions. This is quite enough for you to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed regarding all conditions.

3.1 Once upon a time this Mount Vepulla was known as Vaṅkaka. And at that time people were known as Rohitassas. The lifespan of the Rohitassas was 30,000 years. It took them three days to climb Mount Vepulla, and three days to descend. At that time Koṇāgamana, the Blessed One, the perfected one, the fully awakened Buddha arose in the world. Koṇāgamana had a fine pair of chief disciples named Bhiyyosa and Uttara. See, mendicants! This mountain's name has vanished, those people have passed away, and that Buddha has become fully quenched. So impermanent are conditions ...

4.1 Once upon a time this Mount Vepulla was known as Supassa. And at that time people were known as Suppiyas. The lifespan of the Suppiyas was 20,000 years. It took them two days to climb Mount Vepulla, and two days to descend. At that time Kassapa, the Blessed One, the perfected one, the fully awakened Buddha arose in the world. Kassapa had a fine pair of chief disciples named Tissa and Bhāradvāja. See, mendicants! This mountain's name has vanished, those people have passed away, and that Buddha has become fully quenched. So impermanent are conditions ...

5.1 These days this Mount Vepulla is known as Vepulla. And these people are known as Magadhans. The lifespan of the Magadhans is short, brief, and fleeting. A long life is a hundred years or a little more. It takes the Magadhans an hour to climb Mount Vepulla, and an hour to descend. And now I am the Blessed One, the perfected



one, the fully awakened Buddha who has arisen in the world. I have a fine pair of chief disciples named Sāriputta and Moggallāna. There will come a time when this mountain's name will vanish, those people will die, and I will be fully extinguished. So impermanent are conditions, so unstable are conditions, so unreliable are conditions. This is quite enough for you to become disillusioned, dispassionate, and freed regarding all conditions.”

That is what the Buddha said. Then the Holy One, the Teacher, 6.1  
went on to say:

“For the Tivaras it was Pācīnavamsa, 7.1  
for the Rohitassas, Vaṅkaka,  
Supassa for the Suppiyas,  
and Vepulla for the Magadhans.

Oh! Conditions are impermanent, 8.1  
their nature is to rise and fall;  
having arisen, they cease;  
their stilling is blissful.”

**The Linked Discourses on the unknown beginning are complete.**

LINKED DISCOURSES  
WITH KASSAPA

# The Chapter with Kassapa

SN 16.1

## Content

*Santutṭhasutta*

- At Sāvattṭhi. 1.1
- “Mendicants, Kassapa is content with any kind of robe, and 1.2  
praises such contentment. He doesn’t try to get hold of a robe in  
an improper way. He doesn’t get upset if he doesn’t get a robe. And  
if he does get a robe, he uses it untied, uninfatuated, unattached,  
seeing the drawback, and understanding the escape.
- Kassapa is content with any kind of almsfood ... 2.1
- Kassapa is content with any kind of lodging ... 3.1
- Kassapa is content with any kind of medicines and supplies for 4.1  
the sick ...
- So you should train like this: ‘We will be content with any kind 5.1  
of robe, and praise such contentment. We won’t try to get hold  
of a robe in an improper way. We won’t get upset if we don’t get  
a robe. And if we do get a robe, we’ll use it untied, uninfatuated,  
unattached, seeing the drawback, and understanding the escape.’  
(*All should be told in full the same way.*)
- ‘We will be content with any kind of almsfood ...’ ‘We will be 6.1  
content with any kind of lodging ...’ ‘We will be content with any  
kind of medicines and supplies for the sick ...’ That’s how you  
should train. I will exhort you with the example of Kassapa or  
someone like him. You should practice accordingly.”

## SN 16.2

## Imprudent

*Anottappīśutta*

- 1.1 SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time Venerable Mahākassapa and Venerable Sāriputta were staying near Varanasi, in the deer park at Isipatana.
- 1.3 Then in the late afternoon, Venerable Sāriputta came out of retreat, went to Venerable Mahākassapa, and exchanged greetings with him. When the greetings and polite conversation were over, he sat down to one side and said to Mahākassapa:
- 1.5 “Reverend Kassapa, it’s said that without being keen and prudent you can’t achieve awakening, extinguishment, and the supreme sanctuary from the yoke. But if you’re keen and prudent you can achieve awakening, extinguishment, and the supreme sanctuary from the yoke.
- 2.1 To what extent is this the case?”
- 2.3 “Reverend, take a mendicant who doesn’t foster keenness by thinking: ‘If unarisen unskillful qualities arise in me, they’ll lead to harm.’ ‘If I don’t give up arisen unskillful qualities, they’ll lead to harm.’ ‘If I don’t give rise to unarisen skillful qualities, they’ll lead to harm.’ ‘If arisen skillful qualities cease in me, they’ll lead to harm.’ That’s how you’re not keen.
- 3.1 And how are you not prudent? Take a mendicant who doesn’t foster prudence by thinking: ‘If unarisen unskillful qualities arise in me, they’ll lead to harm.’ ‘If I don’t give up arisen unskillful qualities, they’ll lead to harm.’ ‘If I don’t give rise to unarisen skillful qualities, they’ll lead to harm.’ ‘If arisen skillful qualities cease in me, they’ll lead to harm.’ That’s how you’re not prudent. That’s how without being keen and prudent you can’t achieve awakening, extinguishment, and the supreme sanctuary from the yoke.
- 4.1 And how are you keen? Take a mendicant who fosters keenness by thinking: ‘If unarisen unskillful qualities arise in me, they’ll lead to harm.’ ‘If I don’t give up arisen unskillful qualities, they’ll lead

to harm.’ ‘If I don’t give rise to unarisen skillful qualities, they’ll lead to harm.’ ‘If arisen skillful qualities cease in me, they’ll lead to harm.’ That’s how you’re keen.

And how are you prudent? Take a mendicant who fosters prudence by thinking: ‘If unarisen unskillful qualities arise in me, they’ll lead to harm.’ ‘If I don’t give up arisen unskillful qualities, they’ll lead to harm.’ ‘If I don’t give rise to unarisen skillful qualities, they’ll lead to harm.’ ‘If arisen skillful qualities cease in me, they’ll lead to harm.’ That’s how you’re prudent. That’s how if you’re keen and prudent you can achieve awakening, extinguishment, and the supreme sanctuary from the yoke.”

SN 16.3

## Like the Moon

*Candūpamāsutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

“Mendicants, you should approach families like the moon: withdrawn in body and mind, always the newcomer, and never rude. Suppose a person were to look down at an old well, a rugged cliff, or an inaccessible riverland. They’d withdraw their body and mind. In the same way, you should approach families like the moon: withdrawn in body and mind, always the newcomer, and never rude.

Kassapa approaches families like the moon: withdrawn in body and mind, always the newcomer, and never rude.

2.1

What do you think, mendicants? What kind of mendicant is worthy of approaching families?”

2.3

“Our teachings are rooted in the Buddha. He is our guide and our refuge. Sir, may the Buddha himself please clarify the meaning of this. The mendicants will listen and remember it.”

2.5

Then the Buddha waved his hand in space.

3.1

“Mendicants, this hand is not stuck or held or caught in space. In the same way, when approaching families, a mendicant’s mind

3.2

is not stuck or held or caught, thinking: ‘May those who want material things get them, and may those who want merit make merits!’ They’re just as pleased and happy when others get something as they are when they get something. This kind of mendicant is worthy of approaching families.

4.1 When Kassapa approaches families, his mind is not stuck or held or caught, thinking: ‘May those who want material things get them, and may those who want merit make merits!’ He’s just as pleased and happy when others get something as he is when he gets something.

5.1 What do you think, mendicants? What kind of mendicant’s teaching is pure, and what kind is impure?”

5.3 “Our teachings are rooted in the Buddha. He is our guide and our refuge. Sir, may the Buddha himself please clarify the meaning of this. The mendicants will listen and remember it.”

5.4 “Well then, mendicants, listen and apply your mind well, I will speak.”

5.5 “Yes, sir,” they replied. The Buddha said this:

6.1 “Whoever teaches Dhamma to others with the thought: ‘Oh! May they listen to the teaching from me. When they’ve heard it, may they gain confidence in the teaching and demonstrate their confidence to me.’ Such a mendicant’s teaching is impure.

7.1 Whoever teaches Dhamma to others with the thought: “The teaching is well explained by the Buddha—apparent in the present life, immediately effective, inviting inspection, relevant, so that sensible people can know it for themselves. Oh! May they listen to the teaching from me. When they’ve heard it, may they understand the teaching and practice accordingly.’ So they teach others because of the natural excellence of the teaching, out of compassion, kindness, and sympathy. Such a mendicant’s teaching is pure.

8.1 Kassapa teaches Dhamma to others with the thought: ‘The teaching is well explained by the Buddha—apparent in the present life, immediately effective, inviting inspection, relevant, so that sensible people can know it for themselves. Oh! May they listen to

the teaching from me. When they've heard it, may they understand the teaching and practice accordingly.'

Thus he teaches others because of the natural excellence of the teaching, out of sympathy, kindness, and sympathy. I will exhort you with the example of Kassapa or someone like him. You should practice accordingly." 8.4

SN 16.4

## Visiting Families

*Kulūpakasutta*

At Sāvattthī. 1.1

"What do you think, mendicants? What kind of mendicant is worthy of visiting families? And what kind of mendicant is not worthy of visiting families?" 1.2

"Our teachings are rooted in the Buddha. ..." The Buddha said this: 1.4

"Whoever visits families with the thought: 'May they give to me, may they not fail to give. May they give a lot, not a little. May they give me fine things, not coarse. May they give quickly, not slowly. May they give carefully, not carelessly.' If a mendicant with such a thought approaches a family and they don't give, the mendicant feels slighted. And they experience pain and sadness because of that. If they give only a little ... if they give coarse things ... if they give slowly ... if they give carelessly, the mendicant feels slighted. And they experience pain and sadness because of that. That kind of mendicant is not worthy of visiting families. 2.1

Whoever visits families with the thought: 'When among other families, how could I possibly think: 3.1

"May they give to me, may they not fail to give. May they give a lot, not a little. May they give me fine things, not coarse. May they give quickly, not slowly. May they give carefully, not carelessly.'" 3.3  
If a mendicant with such a thought approaches a family and they don't give, the mendicant doesn't feel slighted. And they don't

experience pain and sadness because of that. If they give only a little ... if they give coarse things ... if they give slowly ... if they give carelessly, the mendicant doesn't feel slighted. And they don't experience pain and sadness because of that. That kind of mendicant is worthy of visiting families.

4.1 Kassapa visits families with the thought: 'When among other families, how could I possibly think:

4.3 "May they give to me, may they not fail to give. May they give a lot, not a little. May they give me fine things, not coarse. May they give quickly, not slowly. May they give carefully, not carelessly." With such a thought, if he approaches a family and they don't give, he doesn't feel slighted. And he doesn't experience pain and sadness because of that. If they give only a little ... if they give coarse things ... if they give slowly ... if they give carelessly, he doesn't feel slighted. And he doesn't experience pain and sadness because of that. I will exhort you with the example of Kassapa or someone like him. You should practice accordingly."

## SN 16.5

# Old Age

## *Jinñasutta*

1.1 So I have heard. Near Rājagaha, in the Bamboo Grove. Then Venerable Mahākassapa went up to the Buddha, bowed, and sat down to one side. The Buddha said to him:

1.4 "You're old now, Kassapa. Those worn-out hempen rag robes must be a burden for you. So Kassapa, you should wear clothes given by householders, accept invitations for the meal, and stay in my presence."

2.1 "For a long time, sir, I've lived in the wilderness, eaten only almsfood, worn rag robes, and owned just three robes; and I've praised these things. I've been one of few wishes, content, secluded, aloof, and energetic; and I've praised these things."



“But seeing what benefit, Kassapa, have you long practiced these things?” 3.1

“Sir, seeing two benefits I have long practiced these things. 4.1

I see happiness for myself in the this life. And I have sympathy 5.1  
for future generations, thinking: ‘Hopefully those who come after  
might follow my example.’ For they may think: ‘It seems that  
the awakened disciples of the Buddha for a long time lived in the  
wilderness, ate only almsfood, wore rag robes, and owned just three  
robes; and they praised these things. They were of few wishes,  
content, secluded, aloof, and energetic; and they praised these  
things.’ They’ll practice accordingly, which will be for their lasting  
welfare and happiness.

Seeing these two benefits I have long practiced these things.” 6.1

“Good, good, Kassapa! You’re acting for the welfare and happi- 7.1  
ness of the people, out of sympathy for the world, for the benefit,  
welfare, and happiness of gods and humans. So Kassapa, wear  
worn-out hempen rag robes, walk for alms, and stay in the wilder-  
ness.”

## SN 16.6

### Advice

#### *Ovādasutta*

Near Rājagaha, in the Bamboo Grove. Then Venerable Mahāka- 1.1  
ssapa went up to the Buddha, bowed, and sat down to one side.

The Buddha said to him:

“Kassapa, advise the mendicants! Give them a Dhamma talk! 1.3  
Either you or I should advise the mendicants and give them a  
Dhamma talk.”

“Sir, the mendicants these days are hard to admonish, having 2.1  
qualities that make them hard to admonish. They’re impatient,  
and don’t take instruction respectfully.

Take the monk called Bhaṇḍa, Ānanda’s protégé. He’s been 2.2  
competing in studies with the monk called Abhiñjika, Anuruddha’s

protégé. They say: ‘Come on, monk, who can recite more? Who can recite better? Who can recite longer?’”

3.1 So the Buddha addressed one of the monks, “Please, monk, in my name tell the monk called Bhaṇḍa, Ānanda’s protégé, and the monk called Abhiñjika, Anuruddha’s protégé that the teacher summons them.”

3.4 “Yes, sir,” that monk replied. He went to those monks and said, “Venerables, the teacher summons you.”

4.1 “Yes, reverend,” those monks replied. They went to the Buddha, bowed, and sat down to one side. The Buddha said to them:

4.2 “Is it really true, monks, that you’ve been competing in studies, saying: ‘Come on, monk, who can recite more? Who can recite better? Who can recite longer?’”

4.4 “Yes, sir.”

4.5 “Have you ever known me to teach the Dhamma like this: ‘Please mendicants, compete in studies to see who can recite more and better and longer?’”

4.8 “No, sir.”

4.9 “If you’ve never known me to teach the Dhamma like this, then what exactly do you know and see, you futile men, that after going forth in such a well explained teaching and training you’d compete in studies to see who can recite more and better and longer?”

5.1 Then those monks bowed with their heads at the Buddha’s feet and said, “We have made a mistake, sir. It was foolish, stupid, and unskillful of us in that after going forth in such a well explained teaching and training we competed in studies to see who can recite more and better and longer. Please, sir, accept our mistake for what it is, so we will restrain ourselves in future.”

6.1 “Indeed, monks, you made a mistake. It was foolish, stupid, and unskillful of you to act in that way. But since you have recognized your mistake for what it is, and have dealt with it properly, I accept it. For it is growth in the training of the Noble One to recognize a mistake for what it is, deal with it properly, and commit to restraint in the future.”

SN 16.7

## Advice (2nd)

*Dutiyaovādasutta*

Near Rājagaha, in the Bamboo Grove. Then Venerable Mahākassapa went up to the Buddha, bowed, and sat down to one side. 1.1

The Buddha said to him, “Kassapa, advise the mendicants! Give them a Dhamma talk! Either you or I should advise the mendicants and give them a Dhamma talk.” 1.3

“Sir, the mendicants these days are hard to admonish, having qualities that make them hard to admonish. They’re impatient, and don’t take instruction respectfully. 2.1

Sir, whoever has no faith, conscience, prudence, energy, and wisdom when it comes to skillful qualities can expect decline, not growth, in skillful qualities, whether by day or by night. 2.2

It’s like the moon in the waning fortnight. Whether by day or by night, its beauty, roundness, light, and diameter and circumference only decline. 3.1

In the same way, whoever has no faith, conscience, prudence, energy, and wisdom when it comes to skillful qualities can expect decline, not growth, in skillful qualities, whether by day or by night. 3.2

A faithless individual is in decline. An individual with no conscience is in decline. An imprudent individual is in decline. A lazy individual is in decline. A witless individual is in decline. An irritable individual is in decline. An acrimonious individual is in decline. When there are no mendicant advisers there is decline. 4.1

Sir, whoever has faith, conscience, prudence, energy, and wisdom when it comes to skillful qualities can expect growth, not decline, in skillful qualities, whether by day or by night. 5.1

It’s like the moon in the waxing fortnight. Whether by day or by night, its beauty, roundness, light, and diameter and circumference only grow. 6.1

- 6.2 In the same way, whoever has faith, conscience, prudence, energy, and wisdom when it comes to skillful qualities can expect growth, not decline, in skillful qualities, whether by day or by night.
- 7.1 A faithful individual doesn't decline. An individual with a conscience doesn't decline. A prudent individual doesn't decline. An energetic individual doesn't decline. A wise individual doesn't decline. A loving individual doesn't decline. A kind individual doesn't decline. When there are mendicant advisers there is no decline."
- 8.1 "Good, good, Kassapa! Whoever has no faith, conscience, prudence, energy, and wisdom when it comes to skillful qualities can expect decline, not growth ...
- 9.3 When there are no mendicant advisers there is decline.
- 10.1 Whoever has faith, conscience, prudence, energy, and wisdom when it comes to skillful qualities can expect growth, not decline ...
- 12.1 When there are mendicant advisers there is no decline."

## SN 16.8

## Advice (3rd)

*Tatiyaovādasutta*

- 1.1 Near Rājagaha, in the squirrels' feeding ground. Then Venerable Mahākassapa went up to the Buddha, bowed, and sat down to one side. The Buddha said to him:
- 1.3 "Kassapa, advise the mendicants! Give them a Dhamma talk! Either you or I should advise the mendicants and give them a Dhamma talk."
- 2.1 "Sir, the mendicants these days are hard to admonish, having qualities that make them hard to admonish. They're impatient, and don't take instruction respectfully."
- 2.2 "Kassapa, that's because formerly the senior mendicants lived in the wilderness, ate only almsfood, wore rag robes, and owned just three robes; and they praised these things. They were of few

wishes, content, secluded, aloof, and energetic; and they praised these things.

The senior mendicants invite such a mendicant to a seat, saying: 3.1  
‘Welcome, mendicant! What is this mendicant’s name? This mendicant is good-natured; he really wants to train. Please, mendicant, take a seat.’

Then the junior mendicants think: ‘It seems that when a mendicant lives in the wilderness ... and is energetic, and praises these things, senior mendicants invite them to a seat ...’ They practice accordingly. That is for their lasting welfare and happiness. 4.1

But these days, Kassapa, the senior mendicants don’t live in the wilderness ... and aren’t energetic; and they don’t praise these things. 5.1

When a mendicant is well-known and famous, a recipient of robes, almsfood, lodgings, and medicines and supplies for the sick, senior mendicants invite them to a seat: ‘Welcome, mendicant! What is this mendicant’s name? This mendicant is good-natured; he really likes his fellow monks. Please, mendicant, take a seat.’ 6.1

Then the junior mendicants think: ‘It seems that when a mendicant is well-known and famous, a recipient of robes, almsfood, lodgings, and medicines and supplies for the sick, senior mendicants invite them to a seat ...’ They practice accordingly. That is for their lasting harm and suffering. And if it could ever be rightly said that spiritual practitioners are imperiled by the peril of a spiritual practitioner, and vanquished by the vanquishing of a spiritual practitioner, it is these days that this could be rightly said.” 7.1

SN 16.9

## Absorptions and Insights

*Jhānābhīṇṇasutta*

At Sāvatthī.

1.1

“Mendicants, whenever I want, quite secluded from sensual pleasures, secluded from unskillful qualities, I enter and remain 1.2

in the first absorption, which has the rapture and bliss born of seclusion, while placing the mind and keeping it connected. And so does Kassapa.

- 2.1 Whenever I want, as the placing of the mind and keeping it connected are stilled, I enter and remain in the second absorption, which has the rapture and bliss born of immersion, with internal clarity and mind at one, without placing the mind and keeping it connected. And so does Kassapa.
- 3.1 Whenever I want, with the fading away of rapture, I enter and remain in the third absorption, where I meditate with equanimity, mindful and aware, personally experiencing the bliss of which the noble ones declare, 'Equanimous and mindful, one meditates in bliss.' And so does Kassapa.
- 4.1 Whenever I want, with the giving up of pleasure and pain, and the ending of former happiness and sadness, I enter and remain in the fourth absorption, without pleasure or pain, with pure equanimity and mindfulness. And so does Kassapa.
- 5.1 Whenever I want, going totally beyond perceptions of form, with the ending of perceptions of impingement, not focusing on perceptions of diversity, aware that 'space is infinite', I enter and remain in the dimension of infinite space. And so does Kassapa.
- 6.1 Whenever I want, going totally beyond the dimension of infinite space, aware that 'consciousness is infinite', I enter and remain in the dimension of infinite consciousness. And so does Kassapa.
- 7.1 Whenever I want, going totally beyond the dimension of infinite consciousness, aware that 'there is nothing at all', I enter and remain in the dimension of nothingness. And so does Kassapa.
- 8.1 Whenever I want, going totally beyond the dimension of nothingness, I enter and remain in the dimension of neither perception nor non-perception. And so does Kassapa.
- 9.1 Whenever I want, going totally beyond the dimension of neither perception nor non-perception, I enter and remain in the cessation of perception and feeling. And so does Kassapa.

Whenever I want, I wield the many kinds of psychic power: 10.1  
 multiplying myself and becoming one again; appearing and dis-  
 appearing; going unobstructed through a wall, a rampart, or a  
 mountain as if through space; diving in and out of the earth as if it  
 were water; walking on water as if it were earth; flying cross-legged  
 through the sky like a bird; touching and stroking with the hand  
 the sun and moon, so mighty and powerful. I control the body as  
 far as the realm of divinity. And so does Kassapa.

Whenever I want, with clairaudience that is purified and super- 11.1  
 human, I hear both kinds of sounds, human and heavenly, whether  
 near or far. And so does Kassapa.

Whenever I want, I understand the minds of other beings and in- 12.1  
 dividuals, having comprehended them with my mind. I understand  
 mind with greed as ‘mind with greed’, and mind without greed  
 as ‘mind without greed’; mind with hate ... mind without hate  
 ... mind with delusion ... mind without delusion ... constricted  
 mind ... scattered mind ... expansive mind ... unexpansive mind  
 ... mind that is not supreme ... mind that is supreme ... mind  
 immersed in samādhi ... mind not immersed in samādhi ... freed  
 mind ... unfreed mind ... And so does Kassapa.

Whenever I want, I recollect my many kinds of past lives. That is: 13.1  
 one, two, three, four, five, ten, twenty, thirty, forty, fifty, a hundred,  
 a thousand, a hundred thousand rebirths; many eons of the world  
 contracting, many eons of the world expanding, many eons of  
 the world contracting and expanding. I remember: ‘There, I was  
 named this, my clan was that, I looked like this, and that was my  
 food. This was how I felt pleasure and pain, and that was how  
 my life ended. When I passed away from that place I was reborn  
 somewhere else. There, too, I was named this, my clan was that, I  
 looked like this, and that was my food. This was how I felt pleasure  
 and pain, and that was how my life ended. When I passed away  
 from that place I was reborn here.’ And so I recollect my many  
 kinds of past lives, with features and details. And so does Kassapa.

- 14.1 Whenever I want, with clairvoyance that is purified and superhuman, I see sentient beings passing away and being reborn—inferior and superior, beautiful and ugly, in a good place or a bad place. I understand how sentient beings are reborn according to their deeds. ‘These dear beings did bad things by way of body, speech, and mind. They denounced the noble ones; they had wrong view; and they chose to act out of that wrong view. When their body breaks up, after death, they’re reborn in a place of loss, a bad place, the underworld, hell. These dear beings, however, did good things by way of body, speech, and mind. They never denounced the noble ones; they had right view; and they chose to act out of that right view. When their body breaks up, after death, they’re reborn in a good place, a heavenly realm.’ And so, with clairvoyance that is purified and superhuman, I see sentient beings passing away and being reborn—inferior and superior, beautiful and ugly, in a good place or a bad place. I understand how sentient beings are reborn according to their deeds. And so does Kassapa.
- 15.1 I have realized the undefiled freedom of heart and freedom by wisdom in this very life. And I live having realized it with my own insight due to the ending of defilements. And so does Kassapa.”

SN 16.10

## The Nuns’ Quarters

*Upassayasutta*

- 1.1 SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time Venerable Mahākassapa was staying near Sāvattī in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. Then Venerable Ānanda robed up in the morning and, taking his bowl and robe, went to Mahākassapa and said, “Kassapa, come, sir. Let’s go to one of the nuns’ quarters.”
- 1.5 “You go, Reverend Ānanda. You have many duties and responsibilities.”
- 1.6 And a second time ...



And a third time, Ānanda said, "Come, Honorable Kassapa. 1.9  
Let's go to one of the nuns' quarters."

Then Venerable Mahākassapa robed up in the morning and, tak- 2.1  
ing his bowl and robe, went with Venerable Ānanda as his second  
monk to one of the nuns' quarters, where he sat on the seat spread  
out. And then several nuns went up to Mahākassapa, bowed, and  
sat down to one side. Mahākassapa educated, encouraged, fired  
up, and inspired those nuns with a Dhamma talk, after which he  
got up from his seat and left.

But the nun Thullatissā was upset and blurted out, "What is 3.1  
Mister Mahākassapa thinking, that he'd teach Dhamma in front of  
Mister Ānanda, the Videhan sage? He's like a needle seller who  
thinks they can sell a needle to a needle maker!"

Mahākassapa heard Thullatissā say these words, and he said to 4.1  
Ānanda, "Is that right, Reverend Ānanda? Am I the needle seller  
and you the needle maker? Or am I the needle maker and you the  
needle seller?"

"Forgive her, sir. The woman's a fool." 4.5

"Hold on, Reverend Ānanda! Don't make the Saṅgha investigate 4.6  
you further!

What do you think, Reverend Ānanda? Was it you who the Bud- 5.1  
dha brought up before the Saṅgha of mendicants, saying: 'Men-  
dicants, whenever I want, quite secluded from sensual pleasures,  
secluded from unskillful qualities, I enter and remain in the first  
absorption, which has the rapture and bliss born of seclusion, while  
placing the mind and keeping it connected. And so does Ānanda?'

"No, sir." 5.5

"I was the one the Buddha brought up before the Saṅgha of 6.1  
mendicants, saying: 'Mendicants, whenever I want, quite secluded  
from sensual pleasures, secluded from unskillful qualities, I enter  
and remain in the first absorption, which has the rapture and bliss  
born of seclusion, while placing the mind and keeping it connected.  
And so does Kassapa. ...'

*(The nine progressive meditations and the five insights should be told in full.)*

- 7.1 What do you think, Reverend Ānanda? Was it you who the Buddha brought up before the Saṅgha of mendicants, saying: ‘I have realized the undefiled freedom of heart and freedom by wisdom in this very life. And I live having realized it with my own insight due to the ending of defilements. And so does Ānanda?’
- 7.5 “No, sir.”
- 8.1 “I was the one the Buddha brought up before the Saṅgha of mendicants, saying: ‘I have realized the undefiled freedom of heart and freedom by wisdom in this very life. And I live having realized it with my own insight due to the ending of defilements. And so does Kassapa.’
- 9.1 Reverend, you might as well think to hide a bull elephant that’s three or three and a half meters tall behind a palm leaf as to hide my six insights.”
- 10.1 But the nun Thullatissā fell from the spiritual life.

SN 16.11

## Robes

*Cīvarasutta*

- 1.1 At one time Venerable Mahākassapa was staying near Rājagaha, in the Bamboo Grove, the squirrels’ feeding ground. Now at that time Venerable Ānanda was wandering in the Southern Hills together with a large Saṅgha of mendicants.
- 2.1 And at that time thirty of Ānanda’s mendicant protégés resigned the training and returned to a lesser life. Most of them were youths.
- 2.2 When Venerable Ānanda had wandered in the Southern Hills as long as he pleased, he set out for Rājagaha, to the Bamboo Grove, the squirrels’ feeding ground. He went up to Venerable Mahākassapa, bowed, and sat down to one side. Mahākassapa said to him:

“Reverend Ānanda, for how many reasons did the Buddha lay 2.3  
down a rule against eating in groups of more than three among  
families?”

“Sir, the Buddha laid down that rule for three reasons. For keep- 3.1  
ing difficult persons in check and for the comfort of good-hearted  
mendicants. To prevent those of corrupt wishes from taking sides  
and dividing the Saṅgha. And out of consideration for families.  
These are the three reasons why the Buddha laid down that rule.”

“So what exactly are you doing, wandering together with these 4.1  
junior mendicants? They don’t guard their sense doors, they eat  
too much, and they’re not committed to wakefulness. It’s like  
you’re wandering about wrecking crops and ruining families! Your  
following is falling apart, Reverend Ānanda, and those just getting  
started are slipping away. Yet this boy knows no bounds!”

“Though there are grey hairs on my head, I still can’t escape 5.1  
being called a boy by Venerable Mahākassapa.”

“It’s because you wander with these junior mendicants. ... Your 5.3  
following is falling apart, Reverend Ānanda, and those just getting  
started are slipping away. Yet this boy knows no bounds!”

The nun Thullanandā heard a rumor that Mister Mahākassapa 6.1  
had rebuked Mister Ānanda the Videhan sage by calling him a boy.

She was upset and blurted out, “How can Mister Mahākassapa, 7.1  
who formerly followed another religion, presume to rebuke Mister  
Ānanda the Videhan sage by calling him a boy?”

Mahākassapa heard Thullanandā say these words, and he said to 7.3  
Ānanda, “Indeed, Reverend Ānanda, the nun Thullanandā spoke  
rashly and without reflection.

Since I shaved off my hair and beard, dressed in ocher robes, 8.3  
and went forth from the lay life to homelessness, I don’t recall  
acknowledging any other teacher apart from the Blessed One, the  
perfected one, the fully awakened Buddha.

Formerly when I was still a layman, I thought: ‘Life at home is 8.4  
cramped and dirty, life gone forth is wide open. It’s not easy for  
someone living at home to lead the spiritual life utterly full and

pure, like a polished shell. Why don't I shave off my hair and beard, dress in ocher robes, and go forth from the lay life to homelessness?' After some time I made an outer robe of patches and, in the name of the perfected ones in the world, I shaved off my hair and beard, dressed in ocher robes, and went forth from the lay life to homelessness.

9.1 When I had gone forth, I traveled along the road between Rājagaha and Nālandā, where I saw the Buddha sitting at the Many Sons Shrine. Seeing him, I thought: 'If I'm ever to see a Teacher, it would be this Blessed One! If I'm ever to see a Holy One, it would be this Blessed One! If I'm ever to see a fully awakened Buddha, it would be this Blessed One!'

9.7 Then I bowed with my head at the Buddha's feet and said: 'Sir, the Buddha is my Teacher, I am his disciple! The Buddha is my Teacher, I am his disciple!'

9.10 The Buddha said to me, 'Kassapa, if anyone was to say to such a wholehearted disciple that they know when they don't know, or that they see when they don't see, their head would explode. But Kassapa, when I say that I know and see I really do know and see.

10.1 So you should train like this: "I will set up a keen sense of conscience and prudence for seniors, juniors, and those in the middle." That's how you should train.

11.1 And you should train like this: "Whenever I hear a teaching connected with what's skillful, I will pay attention, apply the mind, concentrate wholeheartedly, and actively listen to that teaching." That's how you should train.

12.1 And you should train like this: "I will never neglect mindfulness of the body that is full of pleasure." That's how you should train.'

13.1 And when the Buddha had given me this advice he got up from his seat and left. For seven days I ate the nation's almsfood as a debtor. On the eighth day I was enlightened.

14.1 And then the Buddha left the road and went to the root of a certain tree. So I spread out my outer robe of patches folded in

four and said to him, ‘Sir, sit here. That would be for my lasting welfare and happiness.’

The Buddha sat on the seat spread out and said to me, ‘Kassapa, 14.4  
this outer robe of patches is soft.’

‘Sir, please accept my outer robe of patches out of sympathy.’ 14.7

‘In that case, Kassapa, will you wear my worn-out hempen rag 14.8  
robe?’

‘I will wear it, sir.’ 14.9

And so I presented my outer robe of patches to the Buddha, and 14.10  
the Buddha presented me with his worn-out hempen rag robe.

For if anyone should be rightly called the Buddha’s true-born 15.1  
son, born from his mouth, born of the teaching, created by the  
teaching, heir to the teaching, and receiver of his worn-out hempen  
rag robes, it’s me.

Whenever I want, quite secluded from sensual pleasures, se- 16.1  
cluded from unskillful qualities, I enter and remain in the first ab-  
sorption, which has the rapture and bliss born of seclusion, while  
placing the mind and keeping it connected. ...

*(The nine progressive meditations and the five insights should be told in full.)*

I have realized the undefiled freedom of heart and freedom by 17.1  
wisdom in this very life. And I live having realized it with my own  
insight due to the ending of defilements.

Reverend, you might as well think to hide a bull elephant that’s 17.2  
three or three and a half meters tall behind a palm leaf as to hide  
my six insights.”

But the nun Thullanandā fell from the spiritual life. 18.1

SN 16.12

## The Realized One After Death

*Parammaraṇasutta*

At one time Venerable Mahākassapa and Venerable Sāriputta were 1.1  
staying near Varanasi, in the deer park at Isipatana.

- 1.2 Then in the late afternoon, Venerable Sāriputta came out of retreat, went to Venerable Mahākassapa, and exchanged greetings with him. When the greetings and polite conversation were over, he sat down to one side and said to Mahākassapa:
- 1.4 “Reverend Kassapa, does a realized one still exist after death?”
- 1.5 “Reverend, this has not been declared by the Buddha.”
- 1.7 “Well then, does a realized one no longer exist after death?”
- 1.8 “This too has not been declared by the Buddha.”
- 1.10 “Well then, does a realized one both still exist and no longer exist after death?”
- 1.11 “This too has not been declared by the Buddha.”
- 1.13 “Well then, does a realized one neither still exist nor no longer exist after death?”
- 1.14 “This too has not been declared by the Buddha.”
- 1.16 “And why has this not been declared by the Buddha?”
- 1.17 “Because it’s not beneficial or relevant to the fundamentals of the spiritual life. It doesn’t lead to disillusionment, dispassion, cessation, peace, insight, awakening, and extinguishment. That’s why it has not been declared by the Buddha.”
- 2.1 “So what now has been declared by the Buddha?” “‘This is suffering’ has been declared by the Buddha. ‘This is the origin of suffering’ ... ‘This is the cessation of suffering’ ... ‘This is the practice that leads to the cessation of suffering’ has been declared by the Buddha.”
- 2.6 “And why has this been declared by the Buddha?”
- 2.7 “Because it’s beneficial and relevant to the fundamentals of the spiritual life. It leads to disillusionment, dispassion, cessation, peace, insight, awakening, and extinguishment. That’s why it has been declared by the Buddha.”

SN 16.13

## The Counterfeit of the True Teaching

*Saddhammappatirūpakasutta*

SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near Sāvaththi in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Then Venerable Mahākassapa went up to the Buddha, bowed, sat down to one side, and said to him: 1.1

“What is the cause, sir, what is the reason why there used to be fewer training rules but more enlightened mendicants? And what is the cause, what is the reason why these days there are more training rules and fewer enlightened mendicants?” 1.4

“That's how it is, Kassapa. When sentient beings are in decline and the true teaching is disappearing there are more training rules and fewer enlightened mendicants. The true teaching doesn't disappear as long the counterfeit of the true teaching hasn't appeared in the world. But when the counterfeit of the true teaching appears in the world then the true teaching disappears. 1.6

It's like native gold, which doesn't disappear as long as counterfeit gold hasn't appeared in the world. But when counterfeit gold appears in the world then native gold disappears. 2.1

In the same way, the true teaching doesn't disappear as long the counterfeit of the true teaching hasn't appeared in the world. But when the counterfeit of the true teaching appears in the world then the true teaching disappears. 2.3

It's not the elements of earth, water, fire, or air that make the true teaching disappear. Rather, it's the silly people who appear right here that make the true teaching disappear. The true teaching doesn't disappear like a ship that sinks all at once. 3.1

There are five detrimental things that lead to the decline and disappearance of the true teaching. What five? It's when the monks, nuns, laymen, and laywomen lack respect and reverence for the Teacher, the teaching, the Saṅgha, the training, and immersion. 4.1

These five detrimental things lead to the decline and disappearance of the true teaching.

- 5.1     There are five things that lead to the continuation, persistence, and enduring of the true teaching. What five? It's when the monks, nuns, laymen, and laywomen maintain respect and reverence for the Teacher, the teaching, the Saṅgha, the training, and immersion. These five things lead to the continuation, persistence, and enduring of the true teaching."

**The Linked Discourses with Kassapa are complete.**



LINKED DISCOURSES ON  
GAINS AND HONOR

# Chapter One

SN 17.1

## Brutal

*Dāruṇasutta*

- 1.1 SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near Sāvattthī in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. There the Buddha addressed the mendicants, “Mendicants!”
- 1.5 “Venerable sir,” they replied. The Buddha said this:
- 2.1 “Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal, bitter, and harsh. They’re an obstacle to reaching the supreme sanctuary from the yoke.
- 2.2 So you should train like this: ‘We will give up arisen possessions, honor, and popularity, and we won’t let them occupy our minds.’ That’s how you should train.”

SN 17.2

## A Hook

*Baḷisasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattthī.
- 1.2 “Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal, bitter, and harsh. They’re an obstacle to reaching the supreme sanctuary from the yoke.

Suppose a fisherman was to cast a baited hook into a deep lake. 1.3  
 Seeing the bait, a fish would swallow it. And so the fish that swallowed the hook would meet with tragedy and disaster, and the fisherman can do what he wants with it.

‘Fisherman’ is a term for Māra the Wicked. ‘Hook’ is a term 2.1  
 for possessions, honor, and popularity. Whoever enjoys and likes arisen possessions, honor, and popularity is called a mendicant who has swallowed Māra’s hook. They’ve met with tragedy and disaster, and the Wicked One can do with them what he wants.

So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity—bitter and 2.4  
 harsh, an obstacle to reaching the supreme sanctuary from the yoke.

So you should train like this: ‘We will give up arisen possessions, 2.5  
 honor, and popularity, and we won’t let them occupy our minds.’ That’s how you should train.”

### SN 17.3

## A Turtle

### *Kummasutta*

At Sāvattthī. 1.1

“Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal ... 1.2

Once upon a time in a certain lake there was a large family of 1.3  
 turtles that had lived there for a long time. Then one of the turtles said to another, ‘My dear turtle, don’t you go to that place.’

But that turtle did go to that place, and a hunter pierced her with 1.6  
 a harpoon.

Then that turtle went back to the other turtle. When the other 1.8  
 turtle saw her coming off in the distance, he said, ‘My dear turtle, I hope you didn’t go to that place!’

‘I did.’ 1.12

‘But my dear turtle, I hope you’re not hurt or injured!’ 1.13

‘I’m not hurt or injured. But this cord keeps dragging behind 1.14  
 me.’

- 1.15 ‘Indeed, my dear turtle, you’re hurt and injured! Your father and grandfather met with tragedy and disaster because of such a cord. Go now, you are no longer one of us.’
- 2.1 ‘Hunter’ is a term for Māra the Wicked.
- 2.2 ‘Harpoon’ is a term for possessions, honor, and popularity.
- 2.3 ‘Cord’ is a term for greed and relishing.
- 2.4 Whoever enjoys and likes arisen possessions, honor, and popularity is called a mendicant who has been pierced with a harpoon. They’ve met with tragedy and disaster, and the Wicked One can do with them what he wants.
- 2.6 So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...”

SN 17.4

## A Fleecy Sheep

*Dīghalomikasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattthī.
- 1.2 “Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal ...
- 1.3 Suppose a fleecy sheep was to enter a briar patch. She’d get caught, snagged, and trapped at every turn, coming to ruin.
- 1.5 In the same way, take a certain mendicant whose mind is overcome and overwhelmed by possessions, honor, and popularity. They robe up in the morning and, taking their bowl and robe, enter the village or town for alms. They get caught, snagged, and trapped at every turn, coming to ruin.
- 1.7 So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...”

SN 17.5

## A Dung Beetle

*Mīlhakasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattthī.
- 1.2 “Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal ...

Suppose there was a dung-eating beetle full of dung, stuffed with 1.3  
dung, and before her was a huge pile of dung. She'd look down on  
other beetles, thinking: 'For I am a dung-eating beetle full of dung,  
stuffed with dung, and before me is a huge pile of dung.'

In the same way, take a certain mendicant whose mind is over- 1.6  
come and overwhelmed by possessions, honor, and popularity.  
They robe up in the morning and, taking their bowl and robe, enter  
the village or town for alms. There they eat as much as they like,  
get invited back tomorrow, and have plenty of almsfood. When  
they get back to the monastery, they boast in the middle of a group  
of mendicants: 'I ate as much as I liked, got invited back tomorrow,  
and had plenty of almsfood. I get robes, almsfood, lodgings, and  
medicines and supplies for the sick. But these other mendicants  
have little merit or significance, so they don't get these things.' With  
a mind overcome and overwhelmed by possessions, honor, and  
popularity, they look down on other good-hearted mendicants.  
This will be for their lasting harm and suffering.

So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...” 1.12

SN 17.6

## A Bolt of Lightning

*Asanisutta*

At Sāvattḥi. 1.1

“Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal ... 1.2

Who should be struck by lightning? A trainee who comes into 1.3  
possessions, honor, and popularity before they achieve their heart's  
desire.

'Lightning strike' is a term for possessions, honor, and popular- 2.1  
ity.

So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...” 2.2

SN 17.7

## A Poisoned Arrow

*Diddhasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 “Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal ...
- 1.3 Who should be pierced by a poisoned arrow? A trainee who comes into possessions, honor, and popularity before they achieve their heart’s desire.
- 2.1 ‘Arrow’ is a term for possessions, honor, and popularity.
- 2.2 So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...”

SN 17.8

## A Jackal

*Siṅgālasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 “Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal ...
- 1.3 Mendicants, did you hear an old jackal howling at the crack of dawn?”
- 1.4 “Yes, sir.”
- 1.5 “That old jackal has the disease called mange. He’s not happy in his den, or at the root of a tree, or out in the open. Wherever he goes, stands, sits, or lies down he meets with tragedy and disaster.
- 1.7 In the same way, take a certain mendicant whose mind is overcome and overwhelmed by possessions, honor, and popularity. They’re not happy in an empty hut, at the root of a tree, or out in the open. Wherever they go, stand, sit, or lie down they meet with tragedy and disaster.
- 1.9 So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...”

SN 17.9

## Gale-force Winds

*Verambhasutta*

- At Sāvattthī. 1.1
- “Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal ... 1.2
- High in the atmosphere there are gale-force winds blowing. Any 1.3  
bird that flies there is flung about by those gale-force winds. Their  
feet go one way, their wings another, their head another, and their  
body another.
- In the same way, take a certain monk whose mind is overcome 1.6  
and overwhelmed by possessions, honor, and popularity. He robes  
up in the morning and, taking his bowl and robe, enters the village  
or town for alms without guarding body, speech, and mind, without  
establishing mindfulness, and without restraining the sense facul-  
ties. There he sees a female scantily clad, with revealing clothes.  
Lust infects his mind. He rejects the training and returns to a lesser  
life. Some take his robe, others his bowl, others his sitting cloth,  
others his needle case, just like the bird flung about by the gale-  
force winds.
- So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...” 1.11

SN 17.10

## With Verses

*Sagāthakasutta*

- At Sāvattthī. 1.1
- “Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal ... 1.2
- Take a case where I see a certain person whose mind is overcome 1.3  
and overwhelmed by honor. When their body breaks up, after  
death, they’re reborn in a place of loss, a bad place, the underworld,  
hell.

- 1.4 Take another case where I see a certain person whose mind is overcome and overwhelmed by lack of honor. When their body breaks up, after death, they're reborn in a place of loss, a bad place, the underworld, hell.
- 1.5 And take another case where I see a certain person whose mind is overcome and overwhelmed by both honor and lack of honor. When their body breaks up, after death, they're reborn in a place of loss, a bad place, the underworld, hell.
- 1.6 So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ..."
- 2.1 That is what the Buddha said. Then the Holy One, the Teacher, went on to say:
- 3.1 "Whether they're honored  
or not honored, or both,  
their immersion doesn't waver  
as they live diligently.
- 4.1 They persistently meditate  
with subtle view and discernment.  
Rejoicing in the ending of grasping,  
they're said to be a true person."



# Chapter Two

SN 17.11

## A Gold Cup

*Suvaṇṇapātisutta*

- At Sāvatthī. 1.1
- “Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal ... 1.2
- When I’ve comprehended the mind of a certain person, I understand: ‘This venerable would not tell a deliberate lie even for the sake of a gold cup filled with silver powder.’ But some time later I see them tell a deliberate lie because their mind is overcome and overwhelmed by possessions, honor, and popularity. 1.3
- So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...” 1.6

SN 17.12

## A Silver Pot

*Rūpiyapātisutta*

- At Sāvatthī. 1.1
- “Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal ... 1.2
- When I’ve comprehended the mind of a certain person, I understand: ‘This venerable would not tell a deliberate lie even for the sake of a silver pot filled with gold powder.’ But some time later I see them tell a deliberate lie because their mind is overcome and overwhelmed by possessions, honor, and popularity. 1.3

1.6 So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...”

SN 17.13–20

## A Gold Ingot, Etc.

*Suvaṇṇanikkhasuttādiatṭhaka*

1.1 At Sāvattḥi.

1.2 “Mendicants, when I’ve comprehended the mind of a certain person, I understand: ‘This venerable would not tell a deliberate lie even for the sake of a gold ingot.’ ...”

1.4 “‘... for the sake of a hundred gold ingots.’ ...”

1.5 “‘... for the sake of a mountain of gold.’ ...”

1.6 “‘... for the sake of a hundred mountains of gold.’ ...”

1.7 “‘... for the sake of the whole earth full of gold.’ ...”

1.8 “‘... for any kind of material reward.’ ...”

1.9 “‘... for the sake of life.’ ...”

1.10 “‘... for the sake of the finest lady in the land.’ But some time later I see them tell a deliberate lie because their mind is overcome and overwhelmed by possessions, honor, and popularity.

1.12 So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...”

# Chapter Three

SN 17.21

## A Female

*Mātugāmasutta*

- At Sāvatthī. 1.1
- “Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal ... 1.2
- Even if you’re alone with a female she might not occupy your 1.3  
mind, but possessions, honor and popularity would still occupy  
your mind.
- So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...” 1.4

SN 17.22

## The Finest Lady in the Land

*Kalyāṇīsutta*

- At Sāvatthī. 1.1
- “Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal ... 1.2
- Even if you’re alone with the finest lady in the land she might not 1.3  
occupy your mind, but possessions, honor and popularity would  
still occupy your mind.
- So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...” 1.4

SN 17.23

## An Only Son

*Ekaputtakasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattthī.
- 1.2 “Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal ...
- 1.3 A faithful laywoman with a dear and beloved only son would rightly appeal to him, ‘My darling, please be like the householder Citta and Hatthaka of Āḷavī.’
- 1.5 These are a standard and a measure for my male lay disciples, that is, the householder Citta and Hatthaka of Āḷavī.
- 1.6 ‘But my darling, if you go forth from the lay life to homelessness, please be like Sāriputta and Moggallāna.’
- 1.8 These are a standard and a measure for my monk disciples, that is, Sāriputta and Moggallāna.
- 1.9 ‘And my darling, may you not come into possessions, honor, and popularity while you’re still a trainee and haven’t achieved your heart’s desire.’
- 1.10 If a trainee who hasn’t achieved their heart’s desire comes into possessions, honor, and popularity it’s an obstacle for them.
- 1.11 So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...”

SN 17.24

## An Only Daughter

*Ekadhītusutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattthī.
- 1.2 “Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal ...
- 1.3 A faithful laywoman with a dear and beloved only daughter would rightly appeal to her, ‘My darling, please be like the laywomen Khujjuttarā and Veḷukaṇṭakī, Nanda’s mother.’
- 1.5 These are a standard and a measure for my female lay disciples, that is, the laywomen Khujjuttarā and Veḷukaṇṭakī, Nanda’s mother.

‘But my darling, if you go forth from the lay life to homelessness, 1.6  
please be like the nuns Khemā and Uppalavaṇṇā.’

These are a standard and a measure for my nun disciples, that is, 1.8  
the nuns Khemā and Uppalavaṇṇā.

‘And my darling, may you not come into possessions, honor, and 1.9  
popularity while you’re still a trainee and haven’t achieved your  
heart’s desire.’ If a trainee who hasn’t achieved their heart’s desire  
comes into possessions, honor, and popularity it’s an obstacle for  
them.

So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...” 1.11

## SN 17.25

### Ascetics and Brahmins

#### *Samaṇabrāhmaṇasutta*

At Sāvattḥī. 1.1

“Mendicants, there are ascetics and brahmins who don’t truly 1.2  
understand the gratification, drawback, and escape when it comes  
to possessions, honor, and popularity. I don’t deem them as true  
ascetics and brahmins. Those venerables don’t realize the goal of  
life as an ascetic or brahmin, and don’t live having realized it with  
their own insight.

There are ascetics and brahmins who do truly understand the 1.4  
gratification, drawback, and escape when it comes to possessions,  
honor, and popularity. I deem them as true ascetics and brahmins.  
Those venerables realize the goal of life as an ascetic or brahmin,  
and live having realized it with their own insight.”

## SN 17.26

### Ascetics and Brahmins (2nd)

#### *Dutiyasamaṇabrāhmaṇasutta*

At Sāvattḥī. 1.1

- 1.2 “There are ascetics and brahmins who don’t truly understand the origin, ending, gratification, drawback, and escape when it comes to possessions, honor, and popularity ...”
- 1.3 There are ascetics and brahmins who do truly understand ...”

SN 17.27

## Ascetics and Brahmins (3rd)

*Tatīyasamaṇabrāhmaṇasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattḥī.
- 1.2 “There are ascetics and brahmins who don’t truly understand possessions, honor, and popularity, their origin, their cessation, and the path that leads to their cessation ...”
- 1.3 There are ascetics and brahmins who do truly understand ...”

SN 17.28

## Skin

*Chavisutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattḥī.
- 1.2 “Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal ...”
- 1.3 They cut through the outer skin, the inner skin, the flesh, sinews, and bones, until they reach the marrow and keep pushing.
- 1.4 So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...”

SN 17.29

## A Rope

*Rajjusutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattḥī.
- 1.2 “Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal ...”

They cut through the outer skin, the inner skin, the flesh, sinews, 1.3  
and bones, until they reach the marrow and keep pushing.

Suppose a strong man was to twist a tough horse-hair rope 2.1  
around your shin and tighten it. It would cut through the outer  
skin, the inner skin, the flesh, sinews, and bones, until it reached  
the marrow and kept pushing.

In the same way, possessions, honor, and popularity cut through 2.3  
the outer skin, the inner skin, the flesh, sinews, and bones, until  
they reach the marrow and keep pushing.

So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...” 2.4

SN 17.30

## A Mendicant With Defilements Ended

*Bhikkhusutta*

At Sāvattḥi. 1.1

“Mendicants, possessions, honor, and popularity are an obstacle 1.2  
even for a mendicant who is perfected, with defilements ended.”

When he said this, Venerable Ānanda said to the Buddha, “Sir, 1.3  
what do possessions, honor, and popularity obstruct for a mendi-  
cant with defilements ended?”

“Ānanda, I don’t say that possessions, honor, and popularity 1.5  
obstruct the unshakable freedom of heart. But I do say that pos-  
sessions, honor, and popularity obstruct the achievement of blissful  
meditations in this life for a meditator who is diligent, keen, and  
resolute.

So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity—bitter and 1.7  
harsh, an obstacle to reaching the supreme sanctuary from the  
yoke.

So you should train like this: ‘We will give up arisen possessions, 1.8  
honor, and popularity, and we won’t let them occupy our minds.’  
That’s how you should train.”

# Chapter Four

SN 17.31

## Schism

*Bhindisutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 “Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal ...
- 1.3 Devadatta split the Saṅgha because his mind was overcome and overwhelmed by possessions, honor, and popularity.
- 1.4 So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...”

SN 17.32

## Skillful Root

*Kusalamūlasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 “Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal ...
- 1.3 Devadatta cut off his skillful root because his mind was overcome and overwhelmed by possessions, honor, and popularity.
- 1.4 So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...”



SN 17.33

## Skillful Quality

*Kusaladhammasutta*

- At Sāvatthī. 1.1
- “Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal ... 1.2
- Devadatta cut off his skillful quality because his mind was over- 1.3  
come and overwhelmed by possessions, honor, and popularity.
- So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...” 1.4

SN 17.34

## Bright Quality

*Sukkadhammasutta*

- At Sāvatthī. 1.1
- “Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal ... 1.2
- Devadatta cut off his bright quality because his mind was over- 1.3  
come and overwhelmed by possessions, honor, and popularity.
- So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...” 1.4

SN 17.35

## Shortly After He Left

*Acirapakkantasutta*

- At one time the Buddha was staying near Rājagaha, on the Vul- 1.1  
ture’s Peak Mountain, not long after Devadatta had left. There the  
Buddha spoke to the mendicants about Devadatta:
- “Possessions, honor, and popularity came to Devadatta for his 1.3  
own ruin and downfall.
- It’s like a banana tree ... or a bamboo ... or a reed, all of which 2.1  
bear fruit to their own ruin and downfall ...

- 5.1 It's like a mule, which becomes pregnant to its own ruin and downfall. In the same way, possessions, honor, and popularity came to Devadatta for his own ruin and downfall.
- 5.3 So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. That's how you should train."
- 6.1 That is what the Buddha said. Then the Holy One, the Teacher, went on to say:
- 7.1 "The banana tree is destroyed by its own fruit,  
as are the bamboo and the reed.  
Honor destroys a sinner,  
as pregnancy destroys a mule."

SN 17.36

## Five Hundred Carts

*Pañcarathasatasutta*

- 1.1 Near Rājagaha, in the Bamboo Grove, the squirrels' feeding ground.
- 1.2 Now at that time Prince Ajātasattu was going with five hundred carts in the morning and the evening to attend on Devadatta, presenting him with an offering of five hundred servings of food.
- 1.3 Then several mendicants went up to the Buddha, bowed, sat down to one side, and said to him, "Sir, Prince Ajātasattu is going with five hundred carts in the morning and the evening to attend on Devadatta, presenting him with an offering of five hundred servings of food."
- 1.5 "Mendicants, don't envy Devadatta's possessions, honor, and popularity. As long as Prince Ajātasattu goes with five hundred carts in the morning and the evening to attend on Devadatta, presenting him with an offering of five hundred servings of food, Devadatta can expect decline, not growth, in skillful qualities.
- 2.1 If they were to pop a boil on a wild dog's nose, it would get even wilder. In the same way, as long as Prince Ajātasattu goes

with five hundred carts in the morning and the evening to attend on Devadatta, presenting him with an offering of five hundred servings of food, Devadatta can expect decline, not growth, in skillful qualities.

So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity. ...” 2.3

SN 17.37

## Mother

*Mātusutta*

At Sāvatthī. 1.1

“Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal, bitter, and harsh. 1.2  
They’re an obstacle to reaching the supreme sanctuary from the yoke. When I’ve comprehended the mind of a certain person, I understand: ‘This venerable would not tell a deliberate lie even for the sake of their mother.’ But some time later I see them tell a deliberate lie because their mind is overcome and overwhelmed by possessions, honor, and popularity.

So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity—bitter and 1.6  
harsh, an obstacle to reaching the supreme sanctuary from the yoke.

So you should train like this: ‘We will give up arisen possessions, 1.7  
honor, and popularity, and we won’t let them occupy our minds.’ That’s how you should train.”

SN 17.38–43

## Father, Etc.

*Pitusuttādichakka*

At Sāvatthī. 1.1

“Possessions, honor, and popularity are brutal, bitter, and harsh. 1.2  
They’re an obstacle to reaching the supreme sanctuary from the yoke. When I’ve comprehended the mind of a certain person, I

understand: ‘This venerable would not tell a deliberate lie even for the sake of their father.’ ...”

(*Tell in full as in SN 17.37.*)

- 1.6 “‘... brother.’ ...”
- 1.7 “‘... sister.’ ...”
- 1.8 “‘... son.’ ...”
- 1.9 “‘... daughter.’ ...”
- 1.10 “‘... wife.’ But some time later I see them tell a deliberate lie because their mind is overcome and overwhelmed by possessions, honor, and popularity.
- 1.12 So brutal are possessions, honor, and popularity—bitter and harsh, an obstacle to reaching the supreme sanctuary from the yoke.
- 1.13 So you should train like this: ‘We will give up arisen possessions, honor, and popularity, and we won’t let them occupy our minds.’ That’s how you should train.”

**The Linked Discourses on possessions,  
honor, and popularity are complete.**

LINKED DISCOURSES  
WITH RĀHULA

# Chapter One

SN 18.1

## The Eye, Etc.

*Cakkhusutta*

- 1.1 SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near Sāvathī in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery.
- 1.3 Then Venerable Rāhula went up to the Buddha, bowed, sat down to one side, and said to him, “Sir, may the Buddha please teach me Dhamma in brief. When I’ve heard it, I’ll live alone, withdrawn, diligent, keen, and resolute.”
- 2.1 “What do you think, Rāhula? Is the eye permanent or impermanent?”
- 2.3 “Impermanent, sir.”
- 2.4 “But if it’s impermanent, is it suffering or happiness?”
- 2.5 “Suffering, sir.”
- 2.6 “But if it’s impermanent, suffering, and perishable, is it fit to be regarded thus: ‘This is mine, I am this, this is my self’?”
- 2.8 “No, sir.”
- 3.1 “Is the ear permanent or impermanent?”
- 3.2 “Impermanent, sir.” ...
- 3.3 “Is the nose permanent or impermanent?”
- 3.4 “Impermanent, sir.” ...
- 3.5 “Is the tongue permanent or impermanent?”
- 3.6 “Impermanent, sir.” ...
- 3.7 “Is the body permanent or impermanent?”

- “Impermanent, sir.” ... 3.8
- “Is the mind permanent or impermanent?” 3.9
- “Impermanent, sir.” 3.10
- “But if it’s impermanent, is it suffering or happiness?” 3.11
- “Suffering, sir.” 3.12
- “But if it’s impermanent, suffering, and perishable, is it fit to be 3.13  
regarded thus: ‘This is mine, I am this, this is my self?’”
- “No, sir.” 3.15
- “Seeing this, a learned noble disciple grows disillusioned with 4.1  
the eye, the ear, the nose, the tongue, the body, and the mind. Being  
disillusioned, desire fades away. When desire fades away they’re  
freed. When they’re freed, they know they’re freed.
- They understand: ‘Rebirth is ended, the spiritual journey has 4.3  
been completed, what had to be done has been done, there is noth-  
ing further for this place.’”
- (The ten discourses of this series should be told in full the same way.)*

## SN 18.2

## Sights, Etc.

*Rūpasutta*

- At Sāvattthī. 1.1
- “What do you think, Rāhula? Are sights permanent or imper- 1.2  
manent?”
- “Impermanent, sir.” ... “... sounds ... smells ... tastes ... 1.4  
touches ... Are ideas permanent or impermanent?”
- “Impermanent, sir.” ... 1.10
- “Seeing this, a learned noble disciple grows disillusioned with 1.11  
sights, sounds, smells, tastes, touches, and ideas. Being disillusioned,  
desire fades away. ...”

SN 18.3

# Consciousness

*Viññāṇasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 “What do you think, Rāhula? Is eye consciousness permanent or impermanent?”
- 1.4 “Impermanent, sir.” ...
- 1.5 “... ear consciousness ... nose consciousness ... tongue consciousness ... body consciousness ... Is mind consciousness permanent or impermanent?”
- 1.10 “Impermanent, sir.” ...
- 1.11 “Seeing this, a learned noble disciple grows disillusioned with eye consciousness, ear consciousness, nose consciousness, tongue consciousness, body consciousness, and mind consciousness. Being disillusioned, desire fades away. ...”

SN 18.4

# Contact

*Samphassasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 “What do you think, Rāhula? Is eye contact permanent or impermanent?”
- 1.4 “Impermanent, sir.” ...
- 1.5 “... ear contact ... nose contact ... tongue contact ... body contact ... Is mind contact permanent or impermanent?”
- 1.10 “Impermanent, sir.” ...
- 1.11 “Seeing this, a learned noble disciple grows disillusioned with eye contact, ear contact, nose contact, tongue contact, body contact, and mind contact. Being disillusioned, desire fades away. ...”



## SN 18.5

## Feeling

*Vedanāsutta*

- At Sāvatthī. 1.1
- “What do you think, Rāhula? Is feeling born of eye contact permanent or impermanent?” 1.2
- “Impermanent, sir.” ... 1.4
- “... feeling born of ear contact ... feeling born of nose contact ... feeling born of tongue contact ... feeling born of body contact ... Is feeling born of mind contact permanent or impermanent?” 1.5
- “Impermanent, sir.” ... 1.10
- “Seeing this, a learned noble disciple grows disillusioned with feeling born of eye contact, ear contact, nose contact, tongue contact, body contact, and mind contact. ...” 1.11

## SN 18.6

## Perceptions

*Saññāsutta*

- At Sāvatthī. 1.1
- “What do you think, Rāhula? Is perception of sights permanent or impermanent?” 1.2
- “Impermanent, sir.” ... 1.4
- “... perception of sounds ... perception of smells ... perception of tastes ... perception of touches ... Is perception of ideas permanent or impermanent?” 1.5
- “Impermanent, sir.” ... 1.10
- “Seeing this, a learned noble disciple grows disillusioned with the perception of sights, sounds, smells, tastes, touches, and ideas. ...” 1.11

## SN 18.7

## Intention

*Sañcetanāsutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 “What do you think, Rāhula? Is intention regarding sights permanent or impermanent?”
- 1.4 “Impermanent, sir.” ...
- 1.5 “... intention regarding sounds ... intention regarding smells ... intention regarding tastes ... intention regarding touches ... Is intention regarding ideas permanent or impermanent?”
- 1.10 “Impermanent, sir.” ...
- 1.11 “Seeing this, a learned noble disciple grows disillusioned with intention regarding sights, sounds, smells, tastes, touches, and ideas. ...”

## SN 18.8

## Craving

*Taṇhāsutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 “What do you think, Rāhula? Is craving for sights permanent or impermanent?”
- 1.4 “Impermanent, sir.” ...
- 1.5 “... craving for sounds ... craving for smells ... craving for tastes ... craving for touches ... Is craving for ideas permanent or impermanent?”
- 1.10 “Impermanent, sir.” ...
- 1.11 “Seeing this, a learned noble disciple grows disillusioned with craving for sights, sounds, smells, tastes, touches, and ideas. ...”

## SN 18.9

## Elements

*Dhātusutta*

- At Sāvatthī. 1.1
- “What do you think, Rāhula? Is the earth element permanent or impermanent?” 1.2
- “Impermanent, sir.” ... 1.4
- “... the water element ... the fire element ... the air element ... the space element ... Is the consciousness element permanent or impermanent?” 1.5
- “Impermanent, sir.” ... 1.10
- “Seeing this, a learned noble disciple grows disillusioned with the earth element, water element, fire element, air element, space element, and consciousness element ...” 1.11

## SN 18.10

## The Aggregates

*Khandhasutta*

- At Sāvatthī. 1.1
- “What do you think, Rāhula? Is form permanent or impermanent?” 1.2
- “Impermanent, sir.” ... 1.4
- “... feeling ... perception ... choices ... Is consciousness permanent or impermanent?” 1.5
- “Impermanent, sir.” ... 1.9
- “Seeing this, a learned noble disciple grows disillusioned with form, feeling, perception, choices, and consciousness. Being disillusioned, desire fades away. When desire fades away they’re freed. When they’re freed, they know they’re freed.” 1.10

- 1.12      They understand: ‘Rebirth is ended, the spiritual journey has been completed, what had to be done has been done, there is nothing further for this place.’”

# Chapter Two

SN 18.11

## The Eye, Etc.

*Cakkhusutta*

SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near 1.1  
Sāvathī. Then Venerable Rāhula went up to the Buddha, bowed,  
and sat down to one side. The Buddha said to him:

“What do you think, Rāhula? Is the eye permanent or imper- 1.4  
manent?”

“Impermanent, sir.” 1.6

“But if it’s impermanent, is it suffering or happiness?” 1.7

“Suffering, sir.” 1.8

“But if it’s impermanent, suffering, and perishable, is it fit to be 1.9  
regarded thus: ‘This is mine, I am this, this is my self’?”

“No, sir.” 1.11

“... the ear ... the nose ... the tongue ... the body ... Is the 1.12  
mind permanent or impermanent?”

“Impermanent, sir.” 1.17

“But if it’s impermanent, is it suffering or happiness?” 1.18

“Suffering, sir.” 1.19

“But if it’s impermanent, suffering, and perishable, is it fit to be 1.20  
regarded thus: ‘This is mine, I am this, this is my self’?”

“No, sir.” 1.22

“Seeing this, a learned noble disciple grows disillusioned with 1.23  
the eye, the ear, the nose, the tongue, the body, and the mind. Being

disillusioned, desire fades away. When desire fades away they're freed. When they're freed, they know they're freed.

- 1.25 They understand: 'Rebirth is ended, the spiritual journey has been completed, what had to be done has been done, there is nothing further for this place.'

*(The ten discourses of this series should be told in full the same way.)*

SN 18.12–20

## The Nine Discourses on Sights, Etc.

*Rūpādisuttanavaka*

- 1.1 At Sāvattḥī.
- 1.2 “What do you think, Rāhula? Are sights permanent or impermanent?”
- 1.4 “Impermanent, sir.” ... “... sounds ... smells ... tastes ... touches ... ideas ...”
- 2.1 “... eye consciousness ... ear consciousness ... nose consciousness ... tongue consciousness ... body consciousness ... mind consciousness ...”
- 3.1 “... eye contact ... ear contact ... nose contact ... tongue contact ... body contact ... mind contact ...”
- 4.1 “... feeling born of eye contact ... feeling born of ear contact ... feeling born of nose contact ... feeling born of tongue contact ... feeling born of body contact ... feeling born of mind contact ...”
- 5.1 “... perception of sights ... perception of sounds ... perception of smells ... perception of tastes ... perception of touches ... perception of ideas ...”
- 6.1 “... intention regarding sights ... intention regarding sounds ... intention regarding smells ... intention regarding tastes ... intention regarding touches ... intention regarding ideas ...”
- 7.1 “... craving for sights ... craving for sounds ... craving for smells ... craving for tastes ... craving for touches ... craving for ideas ...”

“... the earth element ... the water element ... the fire element 8.1  
... the air element ... the space element ... the consciousness  
element ...”

“... form ... feeling ... perception ... choices ... Is conscious- 9.1  
ness permanent or impermanent?”

“Impermanent, sir.” ... 9.6

“Seeing this ... They understand: ‘... there is nothing further 9.7  
for this place.’”

SN 18.21

## Tendency

*Anusayasutta*

At Sāvattthī. 1.1

Then Venerable Rāhula went up to the Buddha, bowed, sat down 1.2  
to one side, and said to him:

“Sir, how does one know and see so that there’s no I-making, 1.3  
mine-making, or underlying tendency to conceit for this conscious  
body and all external stimuli?”

“Rāhula, one truly sees any kind of form at all—past, future, or 1.4  
present; internal or external; solid or subtle; inferior or superior;  
far or near: *all* form—with right understanding: ‘This is not mine,  
I am not this, this is not my self.’ One truly sees any kind of feeling  
... perception ... choices ... consciousness at all—past, future, or  
present; internal or external; solid or subtle; inferior or superior;  
far or near: *all* consciousness—with right understanding: ‘This is  
not mine, I am not this, this is not my self.’

That’s how to know and see so that there’s no I-making, mine- 1.9  
making, or underlying tendency to conceit for this conscious body  
and all external stimuli.”

SN 18.22

## Rid of Conceit

*Apagatasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 Then Venerable Rāhula went up to the Buddha, bowed, sat down to one side, and said to him:
- 1.3 “Sir, how does one know and see so that the mind is rid of I-making, mine-making, and conceit for this conscious body and all external stimuli; and going beyond discrimination, it’s peaceful and well freed?”
- 1.4 “Rāhula, when one truly sees any kind of form at all—past, future, or present; internal or external; solid or subtle; inferior or superior; far or near: *all* form—with right understanding: ‘This is not mine, I am not this, this is not my self,’ one is freed by not grasping.
- 2.1 When one truly sees any kind of feeling ... perception ... choices ... When one truly sees any kind of consciousness at all—past, future, or present; internal or external; solid or subtle; inferior or superior; far or near: *all* consciousness—with right understanding: ‘This is not mine, I am not this, this is not my self,’ one is freed by not grasping.
- 2.5 That’s how to know and see so that the mind is rid of I-making, mine-making, and conceit for this conscious body and all external stimuli; and going beyond discrimination, it’s peaceful and well freed.”

**The Linked Discourses with Rāhula are complete.**



LINKED DISCOURSES  
WITH LAKKHANA

# Chapter One

SN 19.1

## A Skeleton

*Aṭṭhisutta*

1.1 SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near Rājagaha, in the Bamboo Grove, the squirrels' feeding ground.

1.3 Now at that time Venerable Lakkhaṇa and Venerable Mahāmoggallāna were staying on the Vulture's Peak Mountain. Then Mahāmoggallāna robed up in the morning and, taking his bowl and robe, went to Lakkhaṇa and said to him, "Come, Reverend Lakkhaṇa, let's enter Rājagaha for alms."

1.6 "Yes, reverend," Lakkhaṇa replied.

1.7 As Mahāmoggallāna was descending from Vulture's Peak Mountain he smiled at a certain spot. So Lakkhaṇa said to Mahāmoggallāna, "What is the cause, Reverend Moggallāna, what is the reason you smiled?"

1.10 "Reverend Lakkhaṇa, it's the wrong time for this question. Ask me when we're in the Buddha's presence."

2.1 Then Lakkhaṇa and Mahāmoggallāna wandered for alms in Rājagaha. After the meal, on their return from almsround, they went to the Buddha, bowed, and sat down to one side. Lakkhaṇa said to Mahāmoggallāna:

2.2 "Just now, as Mahāmoggallāna was descending from Vulture's Peak Mountain he smiled at a certain spot. What is the cause, Reverend Moggallāna, what is the reason you smiled?"

“Just now, reverend, as I was descending from Vulture’s Peak 3.1  
Mountain I saw a skeleton flying through the air. Vultures, crows,  
and hawks kept chasing it, pecking, clawing, and stabbing it in the  
ribs as it screeched in pain. It occurred to me: ‘Oh, how incredible,  
how amazing! That there can be such a sentient being, such an  
entity, such an incarnation!’”

Then the Buddha said to the mendicants: 4.1

“Mendicants, there are disciples who live full of vision and 4.2  
knowledge, since a disciple knows, sees, and witnesses such a thing.

Formerly, I too saw that being, but I did not speak of it. For if I 4.4  
had spoken of it others would not have believed me, which would  
be for their lasting harm and suffering.

That being used to be a cattle butcher right here in Rājagaha. 4.7  
As a result of that deed he burned in hell for many years, many  
hundreds, many thousands, many hundreds of thousands of years.  
Now he experiences the residual result of that deed in such an  
incarnation.”

*(Tell all these discourses in full like this.)*

## SN 19.2

# A Piece of Meat

## *Pesisutta*

“Just now, reverend, as I was descending from Vulture’s Peak Moun- 1.1  
tain I saw a scrap of meat flying through the air. Vultures, crows,  
and hawks kept chasing it, pecking and clawing as it screeched in  
pain. ...” ...

“That being used to be a cattle butcher right here in Rājagaha. 1.4  
...”

SN 19.3

## A Piece of Flesh

*Piṇḍasutta*

- 1.1 “Just now, reverend, as I was descending from Vulture’s Peak Mountain I saw a piece of flesh flying through the air. Vultures, crows, and hawks kept chasing it, pecking and clawing as it screeched in pain. ...” ...
- 1.4 “That being used to be a bird hunter right here in Rājagaha. ...”

SN 19.4

## A Flayed Man

*Nicchavisutta*

- 1.1 “Just now, reverend, as I was descending from Vulture’s Peak Mountain I saw a flayed man flying through the air. Vultures, crows, and hawks kept chasing it, pecking and clawing as he screamed in pain. ...” ...
- 1.4 “That being used to be a sheep butcher right here in Rājagaha. ...” ...

SN 19.5

## Sword Hairs

*Asilomasutta*

- 1.1 “Just now, reverend, as I was descending from Vulture’s Peak Mountain I saw a man whose body hairs were swords flying through the air. And those swords kept rising up and falling on his body as he screamed in pain. ...” ...
- 1.4 “That being used to be a pig butcher right here in Rājagaha. ...”

SN 19.6

## Spear Hairs

*Sattisutta*

“Just now, reverend, as I was descending from Vulture’s Peak Mountain I saw a man whose body hairs were spears flying through the air. And those spears kept rising up and falling on his body as he screamed in pain. ...” 1.1

“That being used to be a deer hunter right here in Rājagaha. ...” 1.4

SN 19.7

## Arrow Hairs

*Usulomasutta*

“Just now, reverend, as I was descending from Vulture’s Peak Mountain I saw a man whose body hairs were arrows flying through the air. And those arrows kept rising up and falling on his body as he screamed in pain. ...” 1.1

“That being used to be a torturer right here in Rājagaha. ...” 1.4

SN 19.8

## Needle Hairs

*Sūcilomasutta*

“Just now, reverend, as I was descending from Vulture’s Peak Mountain I saw a man whose body hairs were needles flying through the air. And those needles kept rising up and falling on his body as he screamed in pain. ...” 1.1

“That being used to be a war herald right here in Rājagaha. ...” 1.4

SN 19.9

## Needle Hairs (2nd)

*Dutiyasūcilomasutta*

- 1.1 “Just now, reverend, as I was descending from Vulture’s Peak Mountain I saw a man whose body hairs were needles flying through the air. The needles bored into his head and out his mouth, into his mouth and out his chest, into his chest and out his belly, into his belly and out his thighs, into his thighs and out his calves, and into his calves and out his feet. And he screamed in pain. ...” ...
- 1.9 “That being used to be an informant right here in Rājagaha. ...”

SN 19.10

## Pot Balls

*Kumbhaṇḍasutta*

- 1.1 “Just now, reverend, as I was descending from Vulture’s Peak Mountain I saw a man with testicles as big as pots flying through the air. When he was walking he had to lift his testicles on to his shoulder. And when he sat down, he sat right on them. Vultures, crows, and hawks kept chasing him, pecking and clawing as he screamed in pain. ...” ...
- 1.6 “That being used to be a corrupt official right here in Rājagaha. ...”

# Chapter Two

SN 19.11

## Over His Head

*Sasisakasutta*

SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time near Rājagaha in the Bamboo Grove ... 1.1

“Just now, reverend, as I was descending from Vulture’s Peak Mountain I saw a man sunk over his head in a sewer. ...” ... 1.3

“That being used to be an adulterer right here in Rājagaha. ...” 1.4

SN 19.12

## A Dung Eater

*Gūthakhādasutta*

“Just now, reverend, as I was descending from Vulture’s Peak Mountain I saw a man sunk in a sewer, eating dung with both hands. ...” 1.1

...

“That being used to be a nasty brahmin right here in Rājagaha. 1.2  
In the time of the Buddha Kassapa’s dispensation he invited the Saṅgha of mendicants for a meal. He filled a trough with dung and said: ‘My good men, eat as much as you like, and take what’s left.’  
...”

SN 19.13

## A Flayed Woman

*Nicchavittthisutta*

- 1.1 “Just now, reverend, as I was descending from Vulture’s Peak Mountain I saw a flayed woman flying through the air. Vultures, crows, and hawks kept chasing her, pecking and clawing as she screamed in pain. ...” ...
- 1.4 “That woman used to be an adulteress right here in Rājagaha. ...”

SN 19.14

## A Fishwife

*Maṅgulitthisutta*

- 1.1 “Just now, reverend, as I was descending from Vulture’s Peak Mountain I saw a stinking fishwife flying through the air. Vultures, crows, and hawks kept chasing her, pecking and clawing as she screamed in pain. ...” ...
- 1.4 “That woman used to be a fortune-teller right here in Rājagaha. ...”

SN 19.15

## A Sweltering Woman

*Okilīnīsutta*

- 1.1 “Just now, reverend, as I was descending from Vulture’s Peak Mountain I saw a scorched woman, sooty and sweaty, flying through the air, as she screamed in pain. ...” ...
- 1.3 “That woman used to be the king of Kālīṅga’s chief queen. She was of jealous nature, and poured a brazier of hot coals over her co-wife. ...” ...



SN 19.16

## A Headless Trunk

*Asīsakasutta*

“Just now, reverend, as I was descending from Vulture’s Peak Mountain I saw a headless trunk flying through the air. Its eyes and mouth were on its chest. Vultures, crows, and hawks kept chasing it, pecking and clawing as it screamed in pain. ...” ... 1.1

“That being used to be an executioner called Hārīka right here in Rājagaha. ...” 1.5

SN 19.17

## A Bad Monk

*Pāpabhikkhusutta*

“Just now, reverend, as I was descending from Vulture’s Peak Mountain I saw a monk flying through the air. His outer robe, bowl, belt, and body were burning, blazing, and glowing as he screamed in pain. ...” ... 1.1

“That monk used to be a bad monk in the time of Buddha Kassapa’s dispensation. ...” 1.4

SN 19.18

## A Bad Nun

*Pāpabhikkhunīsutta*

“I saw a nun flying through the air. Her outer robe was burning ...” ... 1.1

“She used to be a bad nun ...” 1.3

SN 19.19

## A Bad Trainee Nun

*Pāpasikkhamānasutta*

- 1.1 “I saw a trainee nun flying through the air. Her outer robe was burning ...” ...
- 1.3 “She used to be a bad trainee nun ...”

SN 19.20

## A Bad Novice Monk

*Pāpasāmañerasutta*

- 1.1 “I saw a novice monk flying through the air. His outer robe was burning ...” ...
- 1.3 “He used to be a bad novice monk ...”

SN 19.21

## A Bad Novice Nun

*Pāpasāmañerīsutta*

- 1.1 “Just now, reverend, as I was descending from Vulture’s Peak Mountain I saw a novice nun flying through the air. Her outer robe, bowl, belt, and body were burning, blazing, and glowing as she screamed in pain. It occurred to me: ‘Oh, how incredible, how amazing! That there can be such a sentient being, such an entity, such an incarnation!’”
- 2.1 Then the Buddha said to the mendicants:
- 2.2 “Mendicants, there are disciples who live full of vision and knowledge, since a disciple knows, sees, and witnesses such a thing.
- 2.4 Formerly, I too saw that novice nun, but I did not speak of it. For if I had spoken of it others would not have believed me, which would be for their lasting harm and suffering.

That female novice used to be a bad novice nun in the time of 2.8  
the Buddha Kassapa's dispensation. As a result of that deed she  
burned in hell for many years, many hundreds, many thousands,  
many hundreds of thousands of years. Now she experiences the  
residual result of that deed in such an incarnation."

**The Linked Discourses with Lakkhaṇa are complete.**

LINKED DISCOURSES  
WITH SIMILES

# The Chapter on the Similes

SN 20.1

## A Roof Peak

*Kūṭasutta*

SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near 1.1  
Sāvathī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery.

There the Buddha ... said: 1.3

“Mendicants, the rafters of a bungalow all lean to the peak and 1.4  
meet at the peak, and when the peak is demolished they're all de-  
molished too. In the same way all unskillful qualities are rooted in  
ignorance and meet in ignorance, and when ignorance is demol-  
ished they're all demolished too.

So you should train like this: ‘We will stay diligent.’ That's how 1.6  
you should train.”

SN 20.2

## A Fingernail

*Nakhasikhasutta*

At Sāvathī. 1.1

Then the Buddha, picking up a little bit of dirt under his fin- 1.2  
gernail, addressed the mendicants: “What do you think, mendi-  
cants? Which is more: the little bit of dirt under my fingernail, or  
this great earth?”

- 1.5 “Sir, the great earth is far more. The little bit of dirt under your fingernail is tiny. Compared to the great earth, it doesn’t count, there’s no comparison, it’s not worth a fraction.”
- 1.8 “In the same way the sentient beings reborn as humans are few, while those not reborn as humans are many.
- 1.10 So you should train like this: ‘We will stay diligent.’ That’s how you should train.”

## SN 20.3

## Families

*Kulasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattthī.
- 1.2 “Mendicants, those families with many women and few men are easy prey for bandits and thieves. In the same way any mendicant who has not developed and cultivated the heart’s release by love is easy prey for non-humans. Those families with few women and many men are hard prey for bandits and thieves. In the same way a mendicant who has developed and cultivated the heart’s release by love is hard prey for non-humans.
- 1.6 So you should train like this: ‘We will develop the heart’s release by love. We’ll cultivate it, make it our vehicle and our basis, keep it up, consolidate it, and properly implement it.’ That’s how you should train.”

## SN 20.4

## Rice Pots

*Okkhāsutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattthī.
- 1.2 “Mendicants, suppose one person was to give a gift of a hundred pots of rice in the morning, at midday, and in the evening. And

someone else was to develop a heart of love, even just as long as it takes to pull a cow's udder. The latter would be more fruitful.

So you should train like this: 'We will develop the heart's release by love. We'll cultivate it, make it our vehicle and our basis, keep it up, consolidate it, and properly implement it.' That's how you should train." 1.3

SN 20.5

## A Spear

*Sattisutta*

At Sāvatthī. 1.1

"Mendicants, suppose there was a sharp-pointed spear. And a man came along and thought, 'With my hand or fist I'll fold this sharp spear over, crumple it, and bend it back!' 1.2

What do you think, mendicants? Is that man capable of doing so?" 1.5

"No, sir. Why not? Because it's not easy to fold that sharp spear over, crumple it, and bend it back with the hand or fist. That man will eventually get weary and frustrated." 1.7

"In the same way, suppose a mendicant has developed the heart's release by love, has cultivated it, made it a vehicle and a basis, kept it up, consolidated it, and properly implemented it. Should any non-human think to overthrow their mind, they'll eventually get weary and frustrated. 2.1

So you should train like this: 'We will develop the heart's release by love. We'll cultivate it, make it our vehicle and our basis, keep it up, consolidate it, and properly implement it.' That's how you should train." 2.3

## SN 20.6

## The Archers

*Dhanuggahasutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

1.2 “Mendicants, suppose there were four well-trained expert archers with strong bows standing in the four quarters. And a man came along and thought, ‘When these four well-trained expert archers shoot arrows in four quarters, I’ll catch them before they reach the ground, and then I’ll bring them back.’

1.5 What do you think, mendicants? Are they qualified to be called ‘a speedster, with ultimate speed’?”

2.1 “If he could catch an arrow shot by just one well-trained expert archer before it reaches the ground and bring it back, he’d be qualified to be called ‘a speedster, with ultimate speed’. How much more so arrows shot by four archers!”

3.1 “As fast as that man is, the sun and moon are faster. As fast as that man is, as fast as the sun and moon are, and as fast as the deities that run before the sun and moon are, the waning of the life forces is faster.

3.3 So you should train like this: ‘We will stay diligent.’ That’s how you should train.”

## SN 20.7

## The Drum Peg

*Āṇisutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

1.2 “Once upon a time, mendicants, the Dasārahas had a clay drum called the Commander. Each time the Commander split they repaired it by inserting another peg. But there came a time when the clay drum Commander’s original wooden rim disappeared and only a mass of pegs remained.



In the same way, in a future time there will be mendicants 1.6  
who won't want to listen when discourses spoken by the Realized  
One—deep, profound, transcendent, dealing with emptiness—are  
being recited. They won't actively listen or try to understand, nor  
will they think those teachings are worth learning and memorizing.

But when discourses composed by poets—poetry, with fancy 2.1  
words and phrases, composed by outsiders or spoken by disci-  
ples—are being recited they will want to listen. They'll actively  
listen and try to understand, and they'll think those teachings are  
worth learning and memorizing. And that is how the discourses  
spoken by the Realized One—deep, profound, transcendent, deal-  
ing with emptiness—will disappear.

So you should train like this: 'When discourses spoken by the 2.3  
Realized One—deep, profound, transcendent, dealing with empti-  
ness—are being recited we will want to listen. We will actively  
listen and trying to understand, and we will think those teachings  
are worth learning and memorizing.' That's how you should train."

SN 20.8

## Wood Blocks

*Kaliṅgarasutta*

SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near 1.1  
Vesālī, at the Great Wood, in the hall with the peaked roof. There  
the Buddha addressed the mendicants, "Mendicants!"

"Venerable sir," they replied. The Buddha said this: 1.5

"Mendicants, these days the Licchavis live using wood blocks 2.1  
as pillows, and they exercise diligently and keenly. King Ajātasattu  
of Magadha, son of the princess of Videha, finds no vulnerability,  
he's got no foothold. But in the future the Licchavis will become  
delicate, with soft and tender hands and feet. They'll sleep on soft  
beds with down pillows until the sun comes up. King Ajātasattu of  
Magadha, son of the princess of Videha, will find a vulnerability,  
he'll get his foothold.

- 3.1 These days the mendicants live using wood blocks as pillows, and they meditate diligently and keenly. Māra the Wicked finds no vulnerability, he's got no foothold. But in the future the mendicants will become delicate, with soft and tender hands and feet. They'll sleep on soft beds with down pillows until the sun comes up. Māra the Wicked will find a vulnerability and will get a foothold.
- 3.6 So you should train like this: 'We will live using wood blocks as pillows, and we will meditate diligently and keenly.' That's how you should train."

## SN 20.9

## A Bull Elephant

*Nāgasutta*

- 1.1 SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near Sāvattḥī in Jeta's Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika's monastery. Now at that time a certain junior mendicant went to visit families too often.
- 1.4 The mendicants said to him, "Venerable, don't go to visit families too often."
- 1.6 But that mendicant, when spoken to by the mendicants, said this, "But these senior mendicants think they can go to visit families, so why can't I?"
- 2.1 And then several mendicants went up to the Buddha, bowed, sat down to one side, and told him what had happened. The Buddha said:
- 3.1 "Once upon a time, mendicants, there was a great lake in the jungle, with bull elephants living nearby. They'd plunge into the lake and pull up lotus bulbs with their trunks. They'd wash them thoroughly until they were free of mud before chewing and swallowing them. That was good for their appearance and strength, and wouldn't result in death or deadly pain.
- 3.5 The young cubs, following the example of the great bull elephants, plunged into the lake and pulled up lotus bulbs with their trunks. But they didn't wash them thoroughly, and while they were

still muddy they chewed and swallowed them. That was not good for their appearance and strength, and resulted in death or deadly pain.

In the same way, there are senior mendicants who robe up in the morning and, taking their bowl and robe, enter the town or village for alms. There they speak on the teachings, and lay people demonstrate their confidence in them. And when they get things, they use them untied, uninfatuated, unattached, seeing the drawbacks, and understanding the escape. That's good for their appearance and strength, and doesn't result in death or deadly pain. 4.1

Junior mendicants, following the example of the senior mendicants, robe up in the morning and, taking their bowl and robe, enter the town or village for alms. There they speak on the teachings, and lay people demonstrate their confidence in them. But when they get things, they use them tied, infatuated, attached, blind to the drawbacks, not understanding the escape. That's not good for their appearance and strength, and results in death or deadly pain. 4.6

So you should train like this: 'When we get things, we will use them untied, uninfatuated, unattached, seeing the drawbacks, and understanding the escape.' That's how you should train." 4.11

SN 20.10

A Cat

*Biḷārasutta*

At Sāvatthī. 1.1

Now at that time a certain mendicant socialized with families too often. 1.2

The mendicants said to him, "Venerable, don't socialize with families too often." 1.3

But that mendicant, when spoken to by the mendicants, did not stop. 1.5

- 1.6 And then several mendicants went up to the Buddha, bowed, sat down to one side, and told him what had happened. The Buddha said:
- 2.1 “Once upon a time, mendicants, a cat was standing by an alley or a drain or a dustbin hunting a little mouse, thinking, ‘When that little mouse comes out to feed, I’ll catch it right there and eat it!’ And then that little mouse came out to feed. The cat caught it and hastily swallowed it without chewing. But that little mouse ate its intestines and mesentery, resulting in death and deadly pain.
- 3.1 In the same way, take a certain monk who robes up in the morning and, taking his bowl and robe, enters the village or town for alms without guarding body, speech, and mind, without establishing mindfulness, and without restraining the sense faculties. There he sees a female scantily clad, with revealing clothes. Lust infects his mind, resulting in death or deadly pain.
- 3.5 For it is death in the training of the Noble One to reject the training and return to a lesser life. And it is deadly pain to commit one of the corrupt offenses for which resolution is possible.
- 3.8 So you should train like this: ‘We will enter the village or town for alms guarding body, speech, and mind, establishing mindfulness, and restraining the sense faculties.’ That’s how you should train.”

SN 20.11

## A Jackal

*Sīṅgālasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 “Mendicants, did you hear an old jackal howling at the crack of dawn?”
- 1.3 “Yes, sir.”
- 1.4 “That old jackal has the disease called mange. Yet it still goes where it wants, stands where it wants, sits where it wants, and lies down where it wants. And the cool breeze still blows on it.

A certain person here who claims to follow the Sakyan would be lucky to experience even such an incarnation.

So you should train like this: ‘We will stay diligent.’ That’s how you should train.” 1.1

SN 20.12

## A Jackal (2nd)

*Dutiyasiṅgālasutta*

At Sāvattthī. 1.1

“Mendicants, did you hear an old jackal howling at the crack of dawn?” 1.2

“Yes, sir.” 1.3

“There might be some gratitude and thankfulness in that old jackal, but there is none in a certain person here who claims to follow the Sakyan. 1.4

So you should train like this: ‘We will be grateful and thankful. We won’t forget even a small thing done for us.’ That’s how you should train.” 1.5

**The Linked Discourses with similes are complete.**

LINKED DISCOURSES  
WITH MONKS

# The Chapter on Monks

SN 21.1

With Kolita

*Kolitasutta*

SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near 1.1  
Sāvatthī in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. There Venerable Mahāmoggallāna addressed the mendicants: “Reverends, mendicants!”

“Reverend,” they replied. 1.5

Venerable Mahāmoggallāna said this: 2.1

“Just now, reverends, as I was in private retreat this thought came 2.2  
to mind: ‘They speak of this thing called “noble silence”. What then is this noble silence?’

It occurred to me: ‘As the placing of the mind and keeping it 2.5  
connected are stilled, a mendicant enters and remains in the second absorption, which has the rapture and bliss born of immersion, with internal clarity and mind at one, without placing the mind and keeping it connected. This is called noble silence.’

And so, as the placing of the mind and keeping it connected were 2.8  
stilled, I was entering and remaining in the second absorption, which has the rapture and bliss born of immersion, with internal clarity and mind at one, without placing the mind and keeping it connected.

While I was in that meditation, perception and focus accompa- 2.9  
nied by placing the mind beset me.

- 3.1 Then the Buddha came up to me with his psychic power and said, ‘Moggallāna, Moggallāna! Don’t neglect noble silence, brahmin! Settle your mind in noble silence; unify your mind and bring it to immersion in noble silence.’
- 3.3 And so, after some time, as the placing of the mind and keeping it connected were stilled, I entered and remained in the second absorption ...
- 3.4 So if anyone should be rightly called a disciple who attained to great direct knowledge with help from the Teacher, it’s me.”

## SN 21.2

## With Upatissa

*Upatissasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 There Sāriputta addressed the mendicants: “Reverends, mendicants!”
- 1.4 “Reverend,” they replied. Sāriputta said this:
- 2.1 “Just now, reverends, as I was in private retreat this thought came to mind: ‘Is there anything in the world whose decay and perishing would give rise to sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress in me?’ It occurred to me: ‘There is nothing in the world whose decay and perishing would give rise to sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress in me.’”
- 3.1 When he said this, Venerable Ānanda said to him, “Even if the Teacher were to decay and perish? Wouldn’t that give rise to sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress in you?”
- 3.3 “Even if the Teacher were to decay and perish, that wouldn’t give rise to sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress in me. Still, I would think: ‘Alas, the illustrious Teacher, so mighty and powerful, has vanished! If the Buddha was to remain for a long time, that would be for the welfare and happiness of the people, out of sympathy for the world, for the benefit, welfare, and happiness of gods and humans.’”



“That must be because Venerable Sāriputta has long ago totally 3.6  
 eradicated I-making, mine-making, and the underlying tendency to  
 conceit. So even if the Teacher were to decay and perish, it wouldn’t  
 give rise to sorrow, lamentation, pain, sadness, and distress in him.”

SN 21.3

## A Mound of Salt

*Ghaṭasutta*

SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near 1.1  
 Sāvattī in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery.

At that time Venerables Sāriputta and Moggallāna were staying 1.3  
 near Rājagaha, in the Bamboo Grove, the squirrels’ feeding ground.  
 Then in the late afternoon, Venerable Sāriputta came out of retreat,  
 went to Venerable Moggallāna, and exchanged greetings with him.  
 When the greetings and polite conversation were over, Sāriputta  
 sat down to one side, and said to Mahāmoggallāna:

“Reverend Moggallāna, your faculties are so very clear, and your 2.1  
 complexion is pure and bright. Have you spent the day in a peaceful  
 meditation?”

“Reverend, I’ve spent the day in a coarse meditation. But I have 2.3  
 had some Dhamma talk.”

“Who did you have a Dhamma talk with?” 2.5

“With the Buddha.” 2.6

“But Reverend, the Buddha is far away. He’s staying near Sāvattī 2.7  
 in Jeta’s Grove, Anāthapiṇḍika’s monastery. Did you go to him with  
 your psychic power, or did he come to you?”

“No reverend, I didn’t go to him with my psychic power, nor 2.10  
 did he come to me. Rather, the Buddha cleared his clairvoyance  
 and clairsaudience towards me, and I cleared my clairvoyance and  
 clairsaudience towards him.”

“But what manner of Dhamma talk did you have together?” 2.14

“Well, reverend, I said to the Buddha, ‘Sir, they speak of one 3.1  
 who is energetic. How is an energetic person defined?’

- 3.4 When I said this, the Buddha said, ‘Moggallāna, it’s when a mendicant lives with energy roused up: “Gladly, let only skin, sinews, and bones remain! Let the flesh and blood waste away in my body! I will not stop trying until I have achieved what is possible by human strength, energy, and vigor.” That’s how a person is energetic.’
- 3.8 That’s the Dhamma talk I had together with the Buddha.”
- 4.1 “Reverend, next to Venerable Mahāmoggallāna I’m like a few pieces of gravel next to the Himalayas, the king of mountains. Venerable Mahāmoggallāna is so mighty and powerful he could, if he wished, live on for the proper lifespan.”
- 5.1 “Reverend, next to Venerable Sāriputta I’m like a few grains of salt next to a mound of salt. Venerable Sāriputta has been commended, complimented, and praised by the Buddha:
- 6.1 ‘Sāriputta is full of wisdom,  
ethics, and peace.  
Even a mendicant who has crossed over  
might at best equal him.’”
- 7.1 And so these two spiritual giants agreed with each others’ fine words.

SN 21.4

## A Junior Mendicant

*Navasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvatthī.
- 1.2 Now at that time a certain junior monk, after his meal, on his return from almsround, entered his dwelling, where he adhered to passivity and silence. And he didn’t help the mendicants out when it was time to sew robes. Then several mendicants went up to the Buddha, bowed, sat down to one side, and told him what had happened.

So the Buddha addressed one of the monks, “Please, monk, in my name tell that monk that the Teacher summons him.” 2.1

“Yes, sir,” that monk replied. He went to that monk and said to him, “Reverend, the teacher summons you.” 2.3

“Yes, reverend,” that monk replied. He went to the Buddha, bowed, and sat down to one side. The Buddha said to him: 2.5

“Is it really true, monk, that after your meal, on your return from almsround, you entered your dwelling, where you adhered to passivity and silence, and you didn’t help the mendicants out when it was time to sew robes?” 2.6

“Sir, I am doing my own work.” 2.7

Then the Buddha, knowing that monk’s train of thought, addressed the mendicants: “Mendicants, don’t complain about this monk. This monk gets the four absorptions—blissful meditations in this life that belong to the higher mind—when he wants, without trouble or difficulty. He has realized the supreme culmination of the spiritual path in this very life, and lives having achieved with his own insight the goal for which gentlemen rightly go forth from the lay life to homelessness.” 3.1

That is what the Buddha said. Then the Holy One, the Teacher, went on to say: 4.1

“Not by being slack,  
or with little strength  
is extinguishment realized,  
the freedom from all suffering. 5.1

This young monk,  
this best of men,  
bears his final body,  
having vanquished Māra and his mount.” 6.1

SN 21.5

# With Sujāta

## *Sujātasutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

1.2 Then Venerable Sujāta went to see the Buddha.

1.3 The Buddha saw him coming off in the distance, and addressed the mendicants: “This gentleman is beautiful in both ways. He’s attractive, good-looking, lovely, of surpassing beauty. And he has realized the supreme end of the spiritual path in this very life. He lives having achieved with his own insight the goal for which gentlemen rightly go forth from the lay life to homelessness.”

1.7 That is what the Buddha said. Then the Holy One, the Teacher, went on to say:

2.1 “This mendicant is truly beautiful.  
His heart is sincere,  
he’s unfettered, detached,  
quenched by not grasping.  
He bears his final body,  
having vanquished Māra and his mount.”

SN 21.6

# With Bhaddiya the Dwarf

## *Lakuṇḍakabhaddiyasutta*

1.1 At Sāvatthī.

1.2 Then Venerable Bhaddiya the Dwarf went to see the Buddha.

1.3 The Buddha saw him coming off in the distance, and addressed the mendicants: “Mendicants, do you see this monk coming—ugly, unsightly, deformed, and despised by the mendicants?”

1.6 “Yes, sir.”

1.7 “That mendicant is very mighty and powerful. It’s not easy to find an attainment that he has not already attained. And he has real-

ized the supreme end of the spiritual path in this very life. He lives having achieved with his own insight the goal for which gentlemen rightly go forth from the lay life to homelessness.”

That is what the Buddha said. Then the Holy One, the Teacher, 1.9  
went on to say:

“Geese, herons, and peacocks, 2.1  
elephants and spotted deer—  
though their bodies are not equal,  
they all fear the lion.

So it is for humans— 3.1  
if a little person is wise,  
they’re the truly great one,  
not the fool with a good body.”

## SN 21.7

### With Visākha, Pañcālī's Son

#### *Visākhasutta*

SO I HAVE HEARD. At one time the Buddha was staying near 1.1  
Vesālī, at the Great Wood, in the hall with the peaked roof.

Now at that time Venerable Visākha, Pañcālī's son, was educat- 1.3  
ing, encouraging, firing up, and inspiring the mendicants in the  
assembly hall with a Dhamma talk. His words were polished, clear,  
articulate, expressing the meaning, comprehensive, and indepen-  
dent.

Then in the late afternoon, the Buddha came out of retreat and 2.1  
went to the assembly hall. He sat down on the seat spread out, and  
addressed the mendicants: “Mendicants, who was educating, en-  
couraging, firing up, and inspiring the mendicants in the assembly  
hall with a Dhamma talk?”

“Sir, it was Venerable Visākha, Pañcālī's son.” 2.4

Then the Buddha said to Visākha: 3.1

- 3.2 “Good, good, Visākha! It’s good that you educate, encourage, fire up, and inspire the mendicants in the assembly hall with a Dhamma talk, with words that are polished, clear, articulate, expressing the meaning, comprehensive, and independent.”
- 4.1 That is what the Buddha said. Then the Holy One, the Teacher, went on to say:
- 5.1 “Though an astute person is mixed up with fools,  
they don’t know unless he speaks.  
But when he speaks they know,  
he’s teaching the state free of death.
- 6.1 He should speak and illustrate the teaching,  
holding up the banner of the seers.  
Words well spoken are the seers’ banner,  
for the teaching is the banner of the seers.”

SN 21.8

With Nanda

*Nandasutta*

- 1.1 At Sāvattthī.
- 1.2 Then Venerable Nanda—the Buddha’s cousin on his mother’s side—dressed in nicely pressed and ironed robes, applied eyeshadow, and took a polished black bowl. He went to the Buddha, bowed, and sat down to one side. The Buddha said to him:
- 1.3 “Nanda, as a gentleman who has gone forth out of faith from the lay life to homelessness, it’s not appropriate for you to dress in nicely pressed and ironed robes, apply eyeshadow, and carry a polished black bowl. It’s appropriate for you to stay in the wilderness, eat only almsfood, wear rag robes, and live without concern for sensual pleasures.”
- 1.5 That is what the Buddha said. Then the Holy One, the Teacher, went on to say:

“When will I see Nanda 2.1  
 in the wilderness, wearing rag robes,  
 feeding on scraps offered by strangers,  
 unconcerned for sensual pleasures?”

Then some time later Venerable Nanda stayed in the wilderness, 3.1  
 ate only almsfood, wore rag robes, and lived without concern for  
 sensual pleasures.

## SN 21.9

## With Tissa

*Tissasutta*

At Sāvatthī. 1.1

Then Venerable Tissa—the Buddha’s cousin on his father’s 1.2  
 side—went to the Buddha, bowed, and sat down to one side. He  
 was miserable and sad, with tears flowing. Then the Buddha said  
 to him:

“Tissa, why are you sitting there so miserable and sad, with tears 1.3  
 flowing?”

“Sir, it’s because the mendicants beset me on all sides with sneer- 1.4  
 ing and jeering.”

“That’s because you admonish others, but don’t accept admoni- 1.5  
 tion yourself. As a gentleman who has gone forth out of faith from  
 the lay life to homelessness, it’s not appropriate for you to admon-  
 ish others without accepting admonition yourself. It’s appropriate  
 for you to admonish others and accept admonition yourself.”

That is what the Buddha said. Then the Holy One, the Teacher, 2.1  
 went on to say:

“Why are you angry? Don’t be angry! 3.1  
 It’s better to not be angry, Tissa.  
 For this spiritual life is lived  
 in order to remove anger, conceit, and denigration.”

SN 21.10

## A Mendicant Named Senior

*Theranāmakasutta*

- 1.1 At one time the Buddha was staying near Rājagaha, in the Bamboo Grove, the squirrels' feeding ground.
- 1.2 Now at that time there was a certain mendicant named Senior. He lived alone and praised living alone. He entered the village for alms alone, returned alone, sat in private alone, and focussed on walking mindfully alone.
- 1.4 Then several mendicants went up to the Buddha, bowed, sat down to one side, and said to him, "Sir, there's a certain mendicant named Senior who lives alone and praises living alone."
- 2.1 So the Buddha addressed one of the monks, "Please, monk, in my name tell the mendicant Senior that the teacher summons him."
- 2.4 "Yes, sir," that monk replied. He went to Venerable Senior and said to him, "Reverend Senior, the teacher summons you."
- 2.6 "Yes, reverend," that monk replied. He went to the Buddha, bowed, and sat down to one side. The Buddha said to him:
- 2.7 "Is it really true, Senior, that you live alone and praise living alone?"
- 2.8 "Yes, sir."
- 2.9 "But in what way do you live alone and praise living alone?"
- 2.10 "Well, sir, I enter the village for alms alone, return alone, sit in private alone, and focus on walking mindfully alone. That's how I live alone and praise living alone."
- 3.1 "That is a kind of living alone, I don't deny it. But as to how living alone is fulfilled in detail, listen and apply your mind well, I will speak."
- 3.4 "Yes, sir," he replied.
- 3.5 "And how, Senior, is living alone fulfilled in detail? It's when what's in the past is given up, what's in the future is relinquished, and desire and greed for present incarnations is eliminated. That's how living alone is fulfilled in detail."



That is what the Buddha said. Then the Holy One, the Teacher, 4.1  
went on to say:

“The champion, all-knower, so very intelligent, 5.1  
is unsullied in the midst of all things.  
He’s given up all, freed in the ending of craving:  
I declare that man to be one who lives alone.”

SN 21.11

## With Mahākappina

*Mahākappinasutta*

At Sāvatti. 1.1

Then Venerable Mahākappina went to see the Buddha. 1.2

The Buddha saw him coming off in the distance, and addressed 1.3  
the mendicants: “Mendicants, do you see that monk coming—  
white, thin, with a pointy nose?”

“Yes, sir.” 1.6

“That mendicant is very mighty and powerful. It’s not easy to 1.7  
find an attainment that he has not already attained. And he has real-  
ized the supreme end of the spiritual path in this very life. He lives  
having achieved with his own insight the goal for which gentlemen  
rightly go forth from the lay life to homelessness.”

That is what the Buddha said. Then the Holy One, the Teacher, 2.1  
went on to say:

“The aristocrat is best among people 3.1  
who take clan as the standard.  
But one accomplished in knowledge and conduct  
is best among gods and humans.

The sun blazes by day, 4.1  
the moon glows at night,  
the aristocrat shines in armor,  
and the brahmin shines in absorption.

But all day and all night,  
the Buddha shines with glory.”

SN 21.12

## Companions

*Sahāyakasutta*

1.1 At Sāvattthī.

1.2 Then two mendicants who were companions, protégés of Venerable Mahākappina, went to see the Buddha.

1.3 The Buddha saw them coming off in the distance, and addressed the mendicants: “Mendicants, do you see those monks coming who are companions, protégés of Venerable Mahākappina?”

1.6 “Yes, sir.”

1.7 “Those mendicants are very mighty and powerful. It’s not easy to find an attainment that they have not already attained. And they’ve realized the supreme end of the spiritual path in this very life. They live having achieved with their own insight the goal for which gentlemen rightly go forth from the lay life to homelessness.”

2.1 That is what the Buddha said. Then the Holy One, the Teacher, went on to say:

3.1 “These companion mendicants  
have been together for a long time.  
The true teaching has brought them together,  
the teaching proclaimed by the Buddha.

4.1 They’ve been well trained by Kappina  
in the teaching proclaimed by the Noble One.  
They bear their final body,  
having vanquished Māra and his mount.”

**The Linked Discourses on monks are complete.**

THE BOOK OF CAUSALITY IS FINISHED.

# Colophon

## The Translator

Bhikkhu Sujato was born as Anthony Aidan Best on 4/11/1966 in Perth, Western Australia. He grew up in the pleasant suburbs of Mt Lawley and Attadale alongside his sister Nicola, who was the good child. His mother, Margaret Lorraine Huntsman née Pinder, said “he’ll either be a priest or a poet”, while his father, Anthony Thomas Best, advised him to “never do anything for money”. He attended Aquinas College, a Catholic school, where he decided to become an atheist. At the University of WA he studied philosophy, aiming to learn what he wanted to do with his life. Finding that what he wanted to do was play guitar, he dropped out. His main band was named Martha’s Vineyard, which achieved modest success in the indie circuit.

A seemingly random encounter with a roadside joey took him to Thailand, where he entered his first meditation retreat at Wat Ram Poeng, Chiang Mai in 1992. Feeling the call to the Buddha’s path, he took full ordination in Wat Pa Nanachat in 1994, where his teachers were Ajahn Pasanno and Ajahn Jayasaro. In 1997 he returned to Perth to study with Ajahn Brahm at Bodhinyana Monastery.

He spent several years practicing in seclusion in Malaysia and Thailand before establishing Santi Forest Monastery in Bundanoon, NSW, in 2003. There he was instrumental in supporting the establishment of the Theravada bhikkhuni order in Australia

and advocating for women's rights. He continues to teach in Australia and globally, with a special concern for the moral implications of climate change and other forms of environmental destruction. He has published a series of books of original and groundbreaking research on early Buddhism.

In 2005 he founded SuttaCentral together with Rod Bucknell and John Kelly. In 2015, seeing the need for a complete, accurate, plain English translation of the Pali texts, he undertook the task, spending nearly three years in isolation on the isle of Qi Mei off the coast of the nation of Taiwan. He completed the four main Nikāyas in 2018, and the early books of the Khuddaka Nikāya were complete by 2021. All this work is dedicated to the public domain and is entirely free of copyright encumbrance.

In 2019 he returned to Sydney where he established Lokanta Vihara (The Monastery at the End of the World).

## Creation Process

Primary source was the digital Mahāsaṅgīti edition of the Pali Tipiṭaka. Translated from the Pali, with reference to several English translations, especially those of Bhikkhu Bodhi.

## The Translation

This translation was part of a project to translate the four Pali Nikāyas with the following aims: plain, approachable English; consistent terminology; accurate rendition of the Pali; free of copyright. It was made during 2016–2018 while Bhikkhu Sujato was staying in Qimei, Taiwan.

## About SuttaCentral

SuttaCentral publishes early Buddhist texts. Since 2005 we have provided root texts in Pali, Chinese, Sanskrit, Tibetan, and other

languages, parallels between these texts, and translations in many modern languages. Building on the work of generations of scholars, we offer our contribution freely.

SuttaCentral is driven by volunteer contributions, and in addition we employ professional developers. We offer a sponsorship program for high quality translations from the original languages. Financial support for SuttaCentral is handled by the SuttaCentral Development Trust, a charitable trust registered in Australia.

## About Bilara

“Bilara” means “cat” in Pali, and it is the name of our Computer Assisted Translation (CAT) software. Bilara is a web app that enables translators to translate early Buddhist texts into their own language. These translations are published on SuttaCentral with the root text and translation side by side.

## About SuttaCentral Editions

The SuttaCentral Editions project makes high quality books from selected Bilara translations. These are published in formats including HTML, EPUB, PDF, and print.

You are welcome to print any of our Editions.